Key Conventions—Examples:

■ [ANSWER] Means press the shift key followed by the ENTER key.

A A A Means press the Alpha-shift key followed by the ENTER key.

---

The [ ] menu key (when present on the display) acts the same as the ENTER key.
HP 38G Graphing Calculator
User’s Guide

HEWLETT® PACKARD

HP Part No. F1200-90013

Printed in Singapore
Notice
This manual and any examples contained herein are provided “as is” and are subject to change without notice. Hewlett-Packard Company makes no warranty of any kind with regard to this manual, including, but not limited to, the implied warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose. Hewlett-Packard Co. shall not be liable for any errors or for incidental or consequential damages in connection with the furnishing, performance, or use of this manual or the examples herein.

© Copyright Hewlett-Packard Company 1995. All rights reserved. Reproduction, adaptation, or translation of this manual is prohibited without prior written permission of Hewlett-Packard Company, except as allowed under the copyright laws.

The programs that control this product are copyrighted and all rights are reserved. Reproduction, adaptation, or translation of those programs without prior written permission of Hewlett-Packard Co. is also prohibited.

Hewlett-Packard Co.
Australian Calculator Operation
347, Burwood Highway
Burwood East
Victoria 3151
Australia

Acknowledgments
Hewlett-Packard gratefully acknowledges the members of the Education Advisory Committee (Walter Bitz, Tom Dick, Mark Howell, Alice Kaseberg, Jim McManus, Carla Randall, Alison Warr, and Wade White) for their assistance in the development of this product.

Edition History
Edition 2.........................................................January 1998
# Contents

## Getting Started
- Starting Out ............................................. 1-1
- The Keyboard ........................................... 1-2
- The Display .............................................. 1-6
  - Display Modes ........................................ 1-7
  - Using Input Forms .................................... 1-8
- Home History ............................................ 1-9
- Menu Lists .............................................. 1-10
- Aplets and Their Views ................................. 1-11
  - Aplets .................................................. 1-11
  - Views ................................................... 1-12
  - Exploring an Aplet View by View .................... 1-14
- Catalogs and Editors .................................... 1-16
- Storing and Recalling Variables ....................... 1-17
- Notes and Sketches ..................................... 1-18
  - Note View and Sketch View ......................... 1-18
  - The Notepad .......................................... 1-23
- Managing Aplets ......................................... 1-25
- Sending and Receiving Aplets ......................... 1-27

## Mathematical Calculations
- How to Do Calculations .................................. 2-1
  - Entering Expressions ................................ 2-1
  - Complex Numbers ..................................... 2-4
  - Clearing Numbers ..................................... 2-4
  - Using Previous Results ................................ 2-4
- Storing in Variables ..................................... 2-6
- The VAR Menu ........................................... 2-7
- Symbolic Calculations ................................... 2-10
- Using Math Functions .................................... 2-12
  - The MATH Menu ....................................... 2-12
  - The Math Functions by Category ..................... 2-13
Plotting and Exploring Functions

Defining a Problem .............................................. 3-1
Select an Aplet .................................................... 3-2
Define an Expression (Symbolic View) ................... 3-2
Evaluating Expressions ........................................ 3-5
Examples: Defining Expressions ............................ 3-6
Plotting .......................................................... 3-7
Plot the Expression (Plot View) ............................ 3-7
Examples: Plotting ............................................. 3-8
Exploring the Plot ............................................... 3-11
Tracing ............................................................ 3-12
Zooming ........................................................... 3-13
Other Views for Scaling and Splitting the Graph ...... 3-16
Setting Up the Plot (Plot Setup) ............................ 3-18
Interactive Root-Finding ...................................... 3-19
Examples: Root-Finding with Plots ....................... 3-21
Using a Table of Numbers ...................................... 3-23
Display a Table of Numbers (Numeric View) ......... 3-23
Exploring the Table of Numbers ........................... 3-24
Setting Up the Table (Numeric Setup) .................... 3-25
Building Your Own Table of Numbers .................... 3-26
More Examples .................................................. 3-28

Solve

Solving Equations ................................................ 4-2
Define the Equation ............................................ 4-2
Solve for the Unknown Variable ............................ 4-4
Plotting the Equation .......................................... 4-6
Interpreting Results ............................................ 4-7
Plotting to Find Guesses ..................................... 4-8
About Variables ................................................. 4-11
Statistics
Example: Finding a Linear Equation to Fit Data ............... 5-2
Entering Statistical Data ........................................ 5-5
  One-Variable Data ........................................... 5-6
  Two-Variable Data ........................................... 5-9
Managing Statistical Data ....................................... 5-12
Analyzing the Data ............................................. 5-14
  Defining a Regression Model (2VAR) ....................... 5-14
  Computing Statistics (1VAR and 2VAR) .................... 5-16
Plotting .......................................................... 5-19
  Plot Types .................................................... 5-20
Fitting a Curve to 2VAR Data ................................... 5-21
Regression Coefficients ......................................... 5-21
Plot Settings .................................................... 5-22
Trouble-shooting .................................................. 5-22
Exploring the Plot ............................................... 5-23
  Calculating Predicted Values ................................. 5-24

Using Matrices
Creating and Storing Matrices .................................. 6-1
Matrix Arithmetic ................................................ 6-6
  Solving Systems of Linear Equations ....................... 6-8
Matrix Functions ................................................ 6-9
  Examples ..................................................... 6-13

Using Lists
Creating and Storing Lists ..................................... 7-1
List Functions ................................................... 7-4
  Finding Statistical Values for List Elements ............ 7-7
Programming

The Contents of a Program ........................................ 8-1
Structured Programming .......................................... 8-1
Using the Program Catalog ...................................... 8-1
Programming Commands ........................................... 8-9
  Aplet Commands .................................................. 8-10
  Branch Commands ............................................... 8-11
  Drawing Commands .............................................. 8-13
  Graphic Commands .............................................. 8-15
  Loop Commands .................................................. 8-17
  Matrix Commands ................................................ 8-18
  Print Commands .................................................. 8-20
  Prompt Commands ................................................ 8-21
  Stat-One and Stat-two Commands ............................... 8-25

Storing and Retrieving Variables in Programs ............... 8-26

  The Variable Menu .............................................. 8-26
  Plot-View Variables ............................................ 8-28
  Symbolic-View Variables ................................. 8-35
  Numeric-View Variables ..................................... 8-37
  Note Variables .................................................. 8-39
  Sketch Variables ................................................ 8-39

Menu Maps of the VAR menu ..................................... 8-40

  Home Variables ............................................... 8-40
  Function Variables ............................................ 8-40
  Parametric Variables ......................................... 8-41
  Polar Variables ................................................ 8-41
  Sequence Variables ............................................ 8-42
  Solve Variables ................................................ 8-42
  Statistics Variables .......................................... 8-43

Reference Information

  Regulatory Information ........................................ 9-1
  Limited One-Year Warranty ................................... 9-3
  Service ............................................................ 9-4
  Batteries .......................................................... 9-7
  Resetting the HP 38G ......................................... 9-8
  Memory Specifications ......................................... 9-8
  Glossary ........................................................... 9-9
  Selected Status Messages .................................... 9-11
Getting Started

Read this chapter first! It will get you started using your HP 38G, from turning it on to running aplets.

Starting Out

The Cover
The protective cover swivels to provide a base for the calculator. Be sure to protect the display by replacing the cover before transporting the calculator. Slide the cover gently so as not to hit the keys.

First push the cover away from you until it catches.

Then swivel the cover to the back and slide it towards you.

ON/CANCEL
When the calculator is on, the [ON] key cancels the current operation.

OFF
Pressing [OFF] (that is, [OFF]) turns the calculator off.
Demo


Home

Home is the calculator's home base. If you want to do calculations, or you want to quit the current activity (such as an aplet, a program, or an editor), press [HOME].

Power

To save power, the calculator turns itself off after several minutes of inactivity. All stored and displayed information are saved.

If you see the ((•)) annunciator or the Low Bat message, then the calculator needs fresh batteries. See chapter 9.

The Keyboard

Shifted Keystrokes

The [shift] key is a shifted keystroke that accesses the operation printed in turquoise above a key. For instance, to access the Modes screen, press [shift], then [HOME]. (You do not need to hold down the [shift].) This is depicted in this manual as "press [shift] [MODES]."

To cancel a shift, press [shift] again.

Alpha Shift

The alphabetic keys are also shifted keystrokes. For instance, to type z, press [A..Z] +. (The letters are printed in light green to the lower right of each key.)


- For a lowercase letter, press [shift] [A..Z].
- For a string of letters, hold down [A..Z] while typing.
Menu Keys

You can press [LIB] to see this screen:

- The top-row keys are called menu keys because their meanings depend on the context—that's why their tops are blank.

- The bottom line of the display shows the labels for the menu keys' current meanings. ([SAVE]) is the label for the first menu key in this picture. "Press ([SAVE])" means to press the leftmost top-row key.

Math Keys

Home ([HOME]) is the place to do calculations.

- **Keyboard keys.** The most common arithmetic operations are on the keyboard, such as the arithmetic (like [+] ) and trigonometric (like [SIN] ) functions. Press [ENTER] to complete the operation: \( \sqrt{256} \) ENTER displays 16.
• **MATH menu.** The [MATH] menu is a comprehensive menu list of math operations that do not appear on the keyboard. It also includes categories for all other functions *and* programmable commands. The functions are grouped by category, ranging in alphabetical order from Calculus to Trigonometry.

![MATH Functions Menu](image)

The arrow keys scroll through the list (▼, ▲) and move from the category list to the item list (►, ◄).

Press [{CANS}] to cancel the MATH menu.

Pressing [{CMDS}] displays the list of Program Commands. Pressing [{CONS}] displays the list of Program Constants. Pressing [{MTH}] displays the list of Math Functions.
### Keys for Entry and Editing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ON (CANCEL)</td>
<td>Pressing [ON] while the calculator is on cancels the current operation. Pressing [OFF] first turns the calculator off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(shift)</td>
<td>Accesses the function printed in turquoise color above a key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HOME</td>
<td>Home base for calculations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-Z</td>
<td>Alphabetic entry—press before a letter key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENTER</td>
<td>Enters an input or executes an operation. In calculations, [ENTER] acts like “=” When {[OK]} is present as a menu key, [ENTER] acts the same as {[OK]}.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-x</td>
<td>Starts a negative number. To enter -5, press [-x] 5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[EEX]</td>
<td>Enters an exponent of 10. To enter $5 \times 10^9$, you press 5 [EEX] 9. This appears as 5E9 or, after pressing [ENTER], 5000000000.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X,T,θ</td>
<td>Independent variable key. Types X, T, θ, or N into the display, depending on the current context.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEL</td>
<td>Delete key. Backspaces if at the end of the line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[CLEAR]</td>
<td>Clear key. Clears all data on the screen except settings, which return to their default values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[CHARS]</td>
<td>Displays all available characters. To type one, highlight it and press {[OK]}.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Inactive Keys

If you press a key that does not operate in the current context, a warning symbol like this ▲ appears. There is no beep.
The Display

To adjust the contrast  Simultaneously press [ON] and [+] (or [-]) to increase (or decrease) the contrast.

The Parts of the Display

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>History</th>
<th>Menu-key labels</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6*3</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8/5</td>
<td>1.6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Annunciators

- **Shift in effect for next keystroke. To cancel, press [ ] again.**
- **Alpha in effect for next keystroke. To cancel, press [A-Z] again.**
- **Low battery power. See chapter 9.**
- **Busy.**
- **Data is being transferred via infrared or cable.**
- **There is more history in the Home display. Scroll up or down to see it.**
- **Radians angle mode is set for Home.**
- **Grads angle mode is set for Home.**
- **Degrees angle mode is set for Home.**

To clear the display

- Press [ON] to clear the edit line.
- Press [CLEAR] to clear the edit line and the display history.
Display Modes

You can set the Home modes in [MODES]. You make your selections using an input form. To fill out an input form, see “Using Input Forms,” after this table. The Decimal Mark setting affects all aplets, as well as Home.

When you are done setting MODES, press [HOME] to return to the Home screen.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Options</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Angle Measure | Angle values are:  
                   Degrees. 360 degrees in a circle.  
                   Radians. 2π radians in a circle.  
                   Grads. 400 grads in a circle.     |
| Number Format |                            
                   Standard. Full-precision display.  
                   Fixed. Displays results rounded to a number of decimal places. Example: 123.456789 becomes 123.4568 in Fixed 4 format.  
                   Scientific. Displays result with an exponent, one digit to the left of the decimal point, and the specified number of decimal places. Example: 123.456789 becomes 1.23E2 in Scientific 2 format.  
                   Engineering. Displays result with an exponent that is a multiple of 3, and the specified number of significant digits beyond the first one. Example: 123.456E7 becomes 1.23E9 in Engineering 2 format.  
                   Fraction. Displays results as fractions based on the specified number of decimal places for precision. Examples: 123.456789 becomes 123 in Fraction 2 format, and .333 becomes 1/3 and 29/1000 becomes 2/69. |
| Decimal Mark  |                            
                   Dot or Comma. Displays a number as 12456.98 (Dot mode) or as 12456.98 (Comma mode).  
                   Dot mode uses commas to separate elements in lists and matrices, and to separate function arguments. Comma mode uses periods as separators in these contexts. |
| Title         | Customizes the title in the Home screen.                                |
To display fractions

Set Fraction mode to display future results as fractions.

1. Press [MODES], then press [v] to select NUMBER FORMAT.
2. Press [(CHOOS)], highlight Fraction, and press [(OK)].
3. Press [R] and enter a number for the precision of the fraction. The precision number determines how many digits appear in the denominator. Press [ENTER].

To convert a result to a fraction

1. Set Fraction mode (as in the previous procedure).
2. In Home, press [A] to highlight the number in the history display that you want to convert.
3. Press [(COPY)] [ENTER].

Using Input Forms

An input form shows several fields of information for you to examine and specify. After highlighting the field to edit, you can enter or edit a number (or expression). You can also select options from a list [(CHOOS)]. Some input forms include items to check [(CHK)].

Example:

Setting Modes

Change the Angle Measure.

1. Press [MODES] to open the MODES input form.
2. The cursor (highlight) should be on the first line, ANGLE MEASURE. Press [(CHOOS)] to display a list of choices. Highlight Degrees, Radians, or Grads and press [(OK)].
Hint Whenever an input form has a list of choices for a field, you can press \( \Rightarrow \) to cycle through them instead of using \{CHOOS\}.

To reset values To reset the original, default value in an input form, press [DEL]. To reset all values in the form, press [CLEAR].

Home History
The Home display (press \[HOME\]) shows up to four lines of history: the most recent input and output. Older lines scroll off the top of the display but are retained in memory; press [A] to view them. Note that these examples are in Standard display mode.

```
input   last input  result
1+2+3   \( \sqrt{2} \)   6
      1.41421356237
      5*77+4
  \[STOP\]  \[STOP\]  \[STOP\]
```

When you highlight a previous input or result (pressing [A]) the {{COPY}} and {{SHOW}} menu labels appear. Pressing {{COPY}} copies the highlighted value to the edit line.

```
input   last input
1+2+3   \( \sqrt{2} \)   6
      1.41421356237
      5*77+1.41421356237
  \[STOP\]  \[COPY \SHOW\]
```

To copy a previous line Highlight the line (press [A]) and press {{COPY}}. The number (or expression) is copied into the edit line.

To repeat a previous line To repeat the very last line, just press [ENTER]. Otherwise, highlight the line (press [A]) first, and then press [ENTER]. The highlighted expression or number is re-entered.
To re-use a previous result

Press ➥ [ANSWER] (last answer) to put the last result from Home into an expression. Ans is a variable that is updated each time you press ➥ ENTER.

Example

See how [ANSWER] retrieves and reuses the last result (50), and ➥ ENTER updates Ans (from 50 to 75 to 100).

```
50 ➥ ENTER
25[+] [ANSWER]
 ENTER ENTER
```

You can use the last result as the first expression in the edit line without pressing ➥ [ANSWER]. Pressing ➤, ➥, ➦, or ➦, (or other operators that require a preceding argument) automatically enters Ans before the operator.

You can reuse any other expression or value in the Home display by highlighting the expression (using the arrow keys), then pressing {{COPY}}.

To display the full number

If a number or expression is too long to appear on one line, then highlight it (press ➤) and press {{SHOW}}. If it is still too long, press ➤ to see more. When done, press {{OK}}.

Menu Lists

A menu offers you a choice of items. The menu labels across the bottom of some displays are one kind of menu. A menu list, which appears in one or two columns, is another kind.

- The ➤ arrow in the display means more items below.
- The ➤ arrow in the display means more items above.
To search a menu list

- Press [▼] or [▲] to scroll through the list. If you press [▼▼▼] or [▲▲▲], you'll go all the way to the end or the beginning of the list. Highlight the item you want to select, then press [{OK}] (or [ENTER]).

- If there are two columns, the left column shows general categories and the right column shows specific contents. Highlight the category on the left, then highlight the item on the right. The list on the right changes when a different category is highlighted. Press [{OK}] or [ENTER].

- To speed-search a list, type the first letter of the word. For example, to find the Matrix category in [MATH], press M (the 5 key).

- To go up a page, you can press [▼▼]. To go down a page, press [▼▼▼▼].

To cancel a menu list

Press CANCEL or [{CANCEL}]. This cancels the current operation.

Aplets and Their Views

Aplets

The HP 38G provides built-in applications to solve specific kinds of math problems. These little applications, or aplets, are accessed from the Library ([LIB]).

The Library lists (and manages) all the aplets in the calculator, whether they came with the calculator or were added later.

There are six types of math aplets built into the HP 38G:

Function
- Real-valued, rectangular function $y$ in terms of $x$. Example: $y = 2x+3$.

Parametric
- Parametric functions $x$ and $y$ in terms of $t$. Example: $x = \cos(t)$ and $y = \sin(t)$.

Polar
- Polar function $r$ in terms of an angle $\theta$. Example: $r = 2\cos(4\theta)$. 
Sequence
- Sequence function $U$ in terms of $n$, or in terms of previous terms in the sequence, such as $U_{n-1}$ and $U_{n-2}$. Example: $U_1 = 0$, $U_2 = 1$, and $U_n = U_{n-2} + U_{n-1}$

Solve
- Finding the roots of an equation.
  Example: $x + 1 = x^2 - x - 2$.

Statistics
- Analysis of one-variable ($x$) or two-variable ($x$ and $y$) statistical data.

Views
An aplet is represented in different ways. These views compose an aplet problem and its solution. Here are illustrations of three major and six supporting aplet views.

SYMB
Symbolic view. The defining equation(s) (in most aplets). The equation contains a symbolic expression.

PLOT
Plot view. The graph of the function(s).

NUM
Numeric view. Sampled values of the function(s).
Symbolic Setup ([SETUP-SYMB]). Sets parameters for the symbolic expression.

Plot Setup ([SETUP- PLOT]). Sets parameters to plot a graph.

Numeric Setup ([SETUP-NUM]). Sets parameters for building a table of numeric values.

Split Screen view. Two views side by side.

Note view. Text to supplement an aplet.

Sketch view. Pictures to supplement an aplet.

Changing Views

Each view is a separate “environment.” To change the view, press another view key. To change to Home, press [HOME]. You do not explicitly “close” the current view, you just enter another one—like passing from one room into another in a house.
Canceling Operations

To cancel an operation within a view, press [ON] (the CANCEL key). Pressing CANCEL will cancel pending operations, but will not change the view.

Exploring an Aplet View by View

Example

Use the Function aplet to explore the real function

\[ y = \sin(\frac{1}{x}) \]

using the Symbolic, Plot, and Numeric views. All the information you enter is automatically saved.


Then press [{START}] to display the Symbolic view.

2. Enter the expression.

(If necessary, highlight a new line or press [DEL] to clear the highlighted expression.)

Press [SIN] 1 [÷] [{X}] [ENTER].

3. There are three Setup views. They are the shifted keystrokes for [SYM], [PLOT], and [NUM]. Check that Radians are set for Symbolic Setup:

Press [SETUP-SYMB] and choose Radians, if necessary.

4. Plot the graph. Press [PLOT]. The coordinates show that when \( x=0, f(x) \) is undefined.

(If your plot does not look like this, try resetting the default plot settings:

Press [SETUP-PLOT]

[CLEAR].)
5. **Trace the plot.** Move the crosshairs along the plot by pressing $\leftarrow$ and $\rightarrow$.

6. **Zoom in and zoom out.** Press $\{\text{MENU}\}$ $\{\text{ZOOM}\}$, highlight In $4 \times 4$, and press $\{\text{OK}\}$.

To restore the original scale, select $\{\text{ZOOM}\}$ Un-zoom.

7. **Display the numbers.** To display a table of data, press $\text{NUM}$. You see the independent (X) and dependent (F1) variables listed with sampled values.

(If your table does not look like this, try resetting the default numeric settings: Press $\text{NUM}$ $\{\text{SETUP-NUM}\}$ $\text{CLEAR}$.)

8. **Split the screen.** Press $\text{VIEWS}$, then select Plot-Table $\{\text{OK}\}$ to display these two views simultaneously.

Press $\text{PLOT}$ to view the full-screen plot again.
Automatic Saving
With this example you have defined a new aplet—an aplet containing data for the solution of \( y = \sin\left(\frac{1}{x}\right) \). The data are automatically saved in the Function aplet. If you want to create another aplet based on Function, then you can give this one a new name in the Library ([SAVE]).

To keep as much memory available for storage as possible, delete aplets you no longer need.

Annotating with Notes
The Note view ([NOTE]) attaches a note to the current aplet. See “Notes and Sketches” later in this chapter.

Annotating with Sketches
The Sketch view ([SKETCH]) attaches a picture to the current aplet. See “Notes and Sketches” later in this chapter.

Calculating in Aplets
You can do calculations in aplets wherever you can enter numbers or expressions. Use the math keys on the keyboard or use operations from the [MATH] menu list. Chapter 2 discusses math calculations.

Catalogs and Editors
The HP 38G has several catalogs and editors. They access features and stored values (numbers or text or other items) that are not part of aplets. A catalog lists items, which you can delete or transmit. An editor lets you create or modify items and numbers.

Catalogs/Editors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Catalog/Editor</th>
<th>Contents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Library ([Lib])</td>
<td>Aplets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List ([LIST])</td>
<td>Lists. In Home, lists are enclosed in { }.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matrix ([MATRIX])</td>
<td>One- and two-dimensional arrays. In Home, arrays are enclosed in [ ].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notepad ([NOTEPAD])</td>
<td>Notes (short text entries).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Program ([PROGRAM])</td>
<td>Programs created by a user.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Storing and Recalling Variables

Variables are storage locations for numbers or values. The HP 38G has different categories of variables for different kinds of data. The names for the variables are predefined. For real numbers, there are 27 variable names available, A through Z and θ. (Other categories and their names are in chapter 2.)

A variable holds just one value, so if you store a new number in it, any previous number is lost.

To store a number

You can store a number from Home's edit line into a named variable with the \{STO\} (store) menu key. \{STO\} appears on a menu-key label whenever it is possible to store a value.) For example,

\[
75\{STO\} \{A.Z\} A
\]

\[
\text{ENTER}
\]

75

When you press \text{ENTER}, the number 75 is stored into the variable named A.

To store the last answer, you don't need to re-type the number:

\[
\{STO\} \{A.Z\} B
\]

\[
\text{ENTER}
\]

75

This stores 75 (the last result) in B.

To recall a number

In Home, to recall a value from a stored variable back to the edit line, just type the name of the variable and press \text{ENTER}.

\[
\{A..Z\} A \text{ ENTER}
\]

75
**“Deleting” Variables**  
A variable always has a value in it, even if that value is zero. When you store another value into a variable, it overwrites the previous value. So you cannot delete a variable’s value, but you can overwrite it.

The predefined variable names (such as A through Z) always exist; you cannot change or delete them.

**Home and Aplet Variables**  
Most variables are *Home variables*, which means they are shared throughout the different contexts of the calculator. Some variables are *plet variables*, which means they apply only to the current aplet. Aplet variables are data sets, expressions, and settings made within an aplet.

**Notes and Sketches**

The HP 38G has compact text and picture editors for entering notes and sketches.

- The Notepad is an independent collection of notes.
- Each aplet includes a Note view and a Sketch view for that aplet only.

**Note View and Sketch View**

You can attach text to an aplet in its Note view ( [ NOTE ] ), or attach pictures to it in its Sketch view ( [ SKETCH ] ).

**To write a note in Note view**

1. In an aplet, press [NOTE] for the Note view.
2. Use the note editing keys shown below.
3. Set Alpha lock ([{A...Z}]) for quick entry of letters. For lowercase Alpha lock, press [{A...Z}].
   - To type a single letter of the opposite case, press \_ letter.
4. Your work is automatically saved. When done, turn off Alpha lock (by pressing [{A...Z}]) if you want to go to Home. (Otherwise, the [HOME] key will still type A.)
### Note Editing Keys

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>{{SPACE}}</td>
<td>Space key for text entry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{{▲PAGE}}</td>
<td>Displays previous page of the note.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{{PAGE▼}}</td>
<td>Displays next page of the note.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{{A...Z}}</td>
<td>Alpha-lock for letter entry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ {{A...Z}}</td>
<td>Lower-case Alpha-lock.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{{BKSP}}</td>
<td>Backspaces cursor and deletes character.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEL</td>
<td>Deletes current character.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENTER</td>
<td>Starts a new line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ [CLEAR]</td>
<td>Erases the entire note.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VAR</td>
<td>Menu for entering variable names, and contents of variables.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH</td>
<td>Menu for entering math operations, program commands, and constant names.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ [CHARS]</td>
<td>Displays special characters. To type one, highlight it and press {{ECHO}}. Pressing {{OK}} copies the character and closes the CHARS screen.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### To import a note

You can import a note from the Notepad into an aplet's Note view, and vice-versa.

1. Open the destination note in the Notepad or in the Note view of an aplet.

2. Press {{VAR}}.
   - If the source note is in the Notepad, press {{HOME}}, highlight Notepad in the left-hand list, then highlight the name of the source note in the right-hand list.
   - If the source note is part of the current aplet, press {{APLET}}, highlight Note in the left-hand list, then press ▶ and highlight NoteText in the right-hand list.

3. Press {{VALUE}} {{OK}} to recall the contents of the source note into the destination note.
**Sketch Keys**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>{{{STO►}}}</code></td>
<td>Stores the specified portion of the current sketch to a graphics variable (G1 through G0).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>{{{NEWP}}}</code></td>
<td>Adds a new, blank page to the current sketch set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>{{{▲PAGE}}}</code></td>
<td>Displays previous sketch in the sketch set. Animates if held down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>{{{PAGE▼}}}</code></td>
<td>Displays next sketch in the sketch set. Animates if held down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>{{{TEXT}}}</code></td>
<td>Opens the edit line to type a text label.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>{{{DRAW}}}</code></td>
<td>Displays the menu-key labels for drawing (below).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DEL</code></td>
<td>Deletes the current sketch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>■ [CLEAR]</code></td>
<td>Erases the entire sketch set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>-</code></td>
<td>Turns off the menu-key labels. Press any menu key to restore them.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**To draw a sketch**

1. In an aplet, press `■ [SKETCH]` for the Sketch view.

2. Press `{{{DRAW}}}`.

3. Use the arrow keys to move the crosshairs (graphics cursor). To draw lines, boxes, or circles, use the menu keys (described next).

4. When done drawing, press `{{{OK}}}`. Your work is automatically saved. Press any other view key or `[HOME]` to exit the Sketch view.

---

1-20 Getting Started
To draw a line 1. In Sketch view, press {{DRAW}} and move the cursor to where you want to start the line
2. Press {{LINE}}. This turns on line-drawing.
3. Move the cursor in any direction to the end point for the line.
4. Press {{OK}} to finish the line.

To draw a box 1. In Sketch view, press {{DRAW}} and move the cursor to where you want any corner of the box to be.
2. Press {{BOX}}. This turns on box-drawing.
3. Move the cursor to mark the opposite corner for the box. You can adjust the size of the box by moving the cursor.
4. Press {{OK}} to finish the box.

To draw a circle 1. In Sketch view, press {{DRAW}} and move the cursor to where you want the center of the circle to be.
2. Press {{CIRCL}}. This turns on circle-drawing.
3. Move the cursor the distance of the radius.
4. Press {{OK}} to draw the circle.
**DRAW Keys**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>{{DOT+}},</td>
<td><em>Dot on, dot off.</em> Turns pixels on/off as crosshairs move.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{{DOT-}}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{{LINE}}</td>
<td>Draws a line from the cursor's starting position to the point at which</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you press {{OK}}. You can draw a line at any angle by moving the cursor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{{BOX}}</td>
<td>Draws a box from the cursor's starting position to the point at which</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>you press {{OK}}.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{{CIRCL}}</td>
<td>Draws a circle. The cursor's starting position is the center of the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>circle. The cursor's ending position (when you press {{OK}}) defines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the radius.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**To label parts of a sketch**

1. Press {{TEXT}} and type the text in the edit line. To lock the Alpha shift on, press {{[A...Z]}} (for uppercase) or \[{{[A...Z]}}\] (for lowercase).

2. To make the label a smaller character size, turn off {{BIG}}. (Pressing {{BIG}} turns on {{BIG}} and vice versa.) The smaller character size cannot display lowercase letters.

3. Press {{OK}}. Use the arrow keys to position the label where you want it.

4. Press {{OK}} again to affix the label.

5. Press {{DRAW}} to continue drawing, or press \[HOME\] to exit Sketch view.

**To create a set of sketches**

You can create a sequence of up to ten sketches. This allows for simple animation.

- After making a sketch, press {{NEWP}} to add a new, blank page that will follow the current page. You can now make a new sketch. The new image becomes part of the current set of sketches.
- To view the next sketch in an existing set, press {{PAGE↑}}. Hold {{PAGE↑}} down for animation.
- To remove the current page in the current sketch series, press \[DEL\].
To store into a graphics variable

You can define a portion of a sketch inside a box, and then store that graphic into a graphics variable.

1. In the Sketch view, display the sketch you want to copy (store into a variable).
2. Press {{STO}}. Highlight the variable name you want to use and press {{OK}}.
3. Draw a box around the whole screen or around the portion you want to copy: move the cursor to one corner, press {{OK}}, then move the cursor to another corner and press {{OK}}.

To recall a graphics variable

1. Open the Sketch view in the destination aplet.
2. Press [VAR] {{HOME}}. Highlight Graphic, then press ▶ and highlight the name of the variable (G1, etc.).
3. Press {{VALUE}} {{OK}} to recall the contents of the graphics variable.
4. Move the box to where you would like to copy the graphic, then press {{OK}}.

The Notepad

You can store as many notes as you want in the Notepad (⋯ [NOTEPAD]). These notes are independent of any aplet. The Notepad catalog lists the existing entries by name. It does not include notes that were created in Note view (⋯ [NOTE]).
To write a note in the Notepad

1. In the Notepad, press `{{EDIT}}` to modify the highlighted note or press `{{NEW}}` to start a new note. For a new note, type in a name and press `{{OK}}`.

2. This opens the note for you to write and edit. Use the Note editing keys as in Note view (see page 1-19).

3. When you are done, you can leave the Notepad by pressing `HOME` or an aplet view key. Your work is automatically saved.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>{{EDIT}}</code></td>
<td>Opens the selected note for editing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>{{NEW}}</code></td>
<td>Opens a new note, and asks for a name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>{{SEND}}</code></td>
<td>Transmits the selected note to another HP 38G or a disk drive. See also page 1-27.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>{{RECV}} (receive)</code></td>
<td>Receives a note being transmitted from another HP 38G or a disk drive. See also page 1-27.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>DEL</code></td>
<td>Deletes the selected note.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>■ [CLEAR]</code></td>
<td>Deletes all notes in the catalog.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Managing Aplets

Once you have entered information into an aplet, you have defined a new version of an aplet. The information is automatically saved under the current aplet name, such as "Function." To create additional aplets of the same type, you must give the current aplet a new name.

The Library is where you go to manage your aplets. Press [LIB]. Highlight (using the arrow keys) the name of the aplet you want to act on.

The current aplet is highlighted.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>{{SAVE}}</td>
<td>Saves the highlighted aplet with a name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{{RESET}}</td>
<td>Resets the default values and settings in the highlighted aplet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{{SORT}}</td>
<td>Rearranges the aplet list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{{SEND}}</td>
<td>Transmits the highlighted aplet to another HP 38G or a storage device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{{RECV}} (receive)</td>
<td>Receives the aplet being sent from another HP 38G or storage device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{{START}} (or [ENTER])</td>
<td>Opens the highlighted aplet.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**To open an aplet**

- Press [LIB] to open the Library. Highlight the aplet and press {{START}} or [ENTER]. The aplet’s main view appears.
- Instead of pressing {{START}}, you can press a view key (like PLOT, SYMB, or NUM) to immediately display that view of the aplet.
To name an aplet
1. Press [LIB] to open the Library. Highlight the aplet to name.
2. Press [{SAVE}] and enter a name. Press [{OK}] to confirm it, [{CANCEL}] to cancel it.

To create a new aplet
You can create a new aplet based on an existing aplet.
1. Open the aplet you want to start from.
2. Enter or modify its information (equations, data, settings). This defines a new version of the aplet. All information is saved until you clear it or edit it.
3. To name the aplet for future access, use [{SAVE}] in the Library.

To delete an aplet
Open the Library, highlight the custom (not built-in) aplet to delete, and press [DEL]. To delete all custom aplets, press [CLEAR].

You cannot delete the built-in aplets. You can clear their data and reset default settings using [{RESET}].

To clear an aplet
Resetting an aplet clears all data and resets all default settings.

- To reset an aplet, open the Library, select the aplet and press [{RESET}].

To sort the aplet list
In the Library, press [{SORT}]. Select the sorting scheme and press [ENTER].

- Chronologically produces a chronological order by most recent use of the aplets. (The last-used aplet appears first, and so on.)
- Alphabetically produces an alphabetical order by aplet name.
Sending and Receiving Aplets

A convenient way to distribute or share problems in class and to turn in homework is to transmit (copy) aplets directly from one HP 38G to another. This takes place via the infrared port.

You can also send (copy) and receive aplets to/from a remote storage device (aplet disk drive or computer). This takes place via a cable connection and requires an aplet disk drive or specialized software running on a PC or Mac (such as a connectivity kit).

To transmit an aplet

1. Connect the storage device to the calculator by cable or
   align the two calculators' infrared ports by matching up the triangle marks on the rims of the calculators. Place the calculators no more than 2 inches (5 cm) apart.

2. Sending calculator: Open the Library, highlight the aplet to send, and press [SEND].
   
   - You have two options: another HP 38G or a disk drive (or a computer). Highlight your selection and press [OK].
   - If transmitting to a disk drive (aplet disk drive or computer), you have the options of sending to the current (default) directory or to another directory.
3. **Receiving calculator**: Open the Library and press `{{RECV}}`.

   - You have two options: another HP 38G or a disk drive (or computer). Highlight your selection and press `{{OK}}`.

If receiving from a remote storage device (aplet disk drive or computer), you will see a list of aplets in its current directory. You can choose a different directory to copy from. Check as many items as you would like to receive.
Mathematical Calculations

The most commonly used math operations are on the keyboard. Access to the rest of the math functions is via the MATH menu (press [MATH]).

The MATH menu also contains commands to use for programming.

How to Do Calculations

Where to Start  The home base for the calculator is Home (press [HOME]). You can do all calculations here, and you can access all MATH operations.

Entering Expressions

- Enter an expression into the HP 38G in the same left-to-right order that you would write the expression. This is called algebraic entry.

- To enter functions, select the key or MATH menu item for that function. You can also use Alpha keys to spell out a function's name.

- Press [ENTER] to evaluate the expression you have in the edit line (where the blinking cursor is). An expression can contain numbers, functions, and variables.

Example  Calculate $23^2 - (14\sqrt{8}) + (-3)\ln45$ with these keystrokes.

\[
\begin{align*}
23 & \left[ x^2 \right] \quad - \quad 14 \quad + \quad \sqrt{8} \\
8 & ( \quad / \quad - \quad 3 \quad \times \quad \text{[LN]} \quad 45 \\
& \downarrow \quad \text{ENTER}
\end{align*}
\]
Long Results If the result is too long to fit in the display line, press \( \text{A} \) to highlight it and then press \([\text{SHOW}]\).

Negative Numbers Type \([-x]\) to start a negative number or to insert a negative sign.

If a negative number will be raised to a power, enclose it in parentheses. For example, \((-5)^2 = 25\), whereas \(-5^2 = -25\).

Scientific Notation (Powers of 10) A number like \(5 \times 10^4\) or \(3.21 \times 10^{-7}\) is written in scientific notation, that is, in terms of powers of ten. This is simpler to work with than 50000 or 0.000000321. To enter numbers like these, use \([\text{EEX}]\). (This is easier than using \(*10^x\).)

Example

Calculate \(\frac{4 \times 10^{-3}}{6 \times 10^2} = 3 \times 10^{-5}\) as shown:

```
4 [EEX] -x 3 * 6
[EEX] 2 / 3 [EEX]
-x 5 ENTER
```

Explicit and Implicit Multiplication You should include the times sign where you expect multiplication in an expression. It is clearest to enter \(AB\) as \(A*B\), and \(A(B+C)\) as \(A*(B+C)\).

*Implied* multiplication takes place when two operands appear with no operator in between. If you enter \(AB\), for example, the result is \(A*B\).

Parentheses Parentheses are necessary to enclose arguments for functions, such as \(\text{SIN}(45)\). You can omit the final parenthesis at the end of an edit line.

Parentheses are also important in specifying the order of operation. *Without* parentheses, the HP 38G calculates according to the order of *algebraic precedence* (the next topic). Following are some examples using parentheses.

2-2 Mathematical Calculations
Examples

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entering...</th>
<th>Calculates...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SIN 45 + π</td>
<td>sin (45 + π)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIN 45 ] + π</td>
<td>sin (45) + π</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\sqrt{x}) 85 ÷ 9</td>
<td>(\sqrt{85} \times 9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\sqrt{x}) [ 85 ÷ 9 ]</td>
<td>(\sqrt{85} \times 9)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Algebraic Precedence (Order of Evaluation)

Functions within an expression are evaluated in the following order of precedence. Functions with the same precedence are evaluated in order from left to right.

1. Expressions within parentheses. Nested parentheses are evaluated from inner to outer.
2. Prefix functions, such as SIN and LOG.
3. Postfix functions, such as !
4. Power function, ^, NTHROOT.
5. Negation, multiplication, and division.
6. Addition and subtraction.
7. AND and NOT.
8. OR and XOR.
9. Left argument of | (where).
10. Equals, =.

Fractions

The HP 38G can display fractions of the form \(a/b\). To set Fractions mode, select Fractions as the Number Format in Home Modes (\(\square\) [MODES]). Specify the number of decimal places to use for the denominator. For instance, in Fraction 2 format, \(29/1000\) becomes \(2/69\).

To enter a fraction use the \(\checkmark\) key.

Largest and Smallest Numbers

The smallest number the HP 38G can represent is \(1 \times 10^{-49}\) (1E-499). A smaller result is displayed as zero. The largest number is \(9.9999999999 \times 10^{49}\). A larger result is still displayed as this number.
Complex Numbers

Complex Results
The HP 38G can return a complex number as a result for some math functions. A complex number appears as an ordered pair \((x, y)\), where \(x\) is the real part and \(y\) is the imaginary part. For example, entering \(\sqrt{-1}\) returns \((0, 1)\).

To enter complex numbers
Enter the number in either of these forms, where \(x\) is the real part, \(y\) is the imaginary part, and \(i\) is the imaginary constant, \(\sqrt{-1}\):

- \((x, y)\)
- \(x + iy\).

To type \(i\), press \[A..Z\] I, or copy \(i\) from the Constant category in the MATH menu.

Clearing Numbers

- \[\text{DEL}\] clears the character under the cursor (\(\bullet\)). \[\text{DEL}\] backspaces when the cursor is after the last character.
- \[\text{CANCEL}\] \(\text{[ON]}\) clears the edit line.
- \[\text{[CLEAR]}\] clears all input and output in the display, including the display history.

Using Previous Results

The Home display shows you four lines of input/output history. An unlimited (except by memory) number of previous lines are available by scrolling. You can retrieve and reuse any of these values or expressions.

Last Answer
\(\text{[ANSWER]}\)
You can reuse the last answer at any point in the edit line by pressing \[\text{[ANSWER]}\]. This recalls the variable \(\text{Ans (last answer)}\), the result from your last \[\text{ENTER}\].

The variable \(\text{Ans}\) is different from the numbers in Home's display history. A value in \(\text{Ans}\) is stored internally with the full precision of the calculated result, whereas the displayed numbers match the display mode. When you retrieve a number from \(\text{Ans}\), you obtain the result to its full precision. When you retrieve a number from Home's display history, you obtain exactly what was displayed.
Note that pressing [ENTER] enters (or re-enters) the last input, whereas pressing [ANSWER] copies the last result into the edit line.

Continuing a Calculation

You can continue calculating with your last result, Ans, simply by pressing an operator key.

50 ÷ 3 [ENTER]
+ 25 [ENTER]

Pressing [ENTER] again updates the value of Ans and repeats the operation.

Accessing the Display History

Pressing [▲] turns on the highlight bar in the display history.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>▲, ▼</td>
<td>Scroll through the display history and highlight display lines.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{{COPY}}</td>
<td>Copies the highlighted expression to the position of the cursor in the edit line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{{SHOW}}</td>
<td>Displays the current expression in standard mathematical form.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEL</td>
<td>Deletes the highlighted expression from the display history, unless there is a cursor in the edit line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[CLEAR]</td>
<td>Clears all lines of display history and the edit line.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Clearing the Display History

It's a good habit to clear the display history ([CLEAR]) whenever you are done working in Home.

It saves calculator memory to clear the display history.
Remember that all your previous inputs and results are saved until you clear them.

Clearing the Edit Line
- DEL deletes single characters in the edit line.
- ON (CANCEL) clears the entire edit line.

Storing in Variables

You can store numbers or expressions from any previous input or result into variables.

Numeric Precision

A number stored in a variable is always stored as a 12-digit mantissa with a 3-digit exponent. Numeric precision in the display, however, depends on the display mode (Standard, Fixed, Scientific, Engineering, or Fraction). A displayed number has only the precision that is displayed.

To store a value

Press \{{STO\}} [A-Z] letter [ENTER], where letter represents the one-letter variable name for real numbers.

\[
6 \{{STO\}} [A-Z] B \quad [ENTER]
\]

You can store the last answer the same way:

\[
13 \div 5 \quad [ENTER]
\]

To store any previous value

If the value you want to store is somewhere else in the Home history, first copy it to the edit line: highlight the line (using arrow keys) and press \{{COPY\}}. Then store it.

To recall a value

Type the name of the variable and press [ENTER].

\[
A [ENTER] \quad 2.6
\]
The VAR Menu

Another way to retrieve a variable is to use the VAR (variables) menu. The VAR menu contains the Home variables, as well as the aplet variables for the current aplet.

The VAR menu is organized by category. For each category of variables on the left, there is a list of variables on the right. The highlighted category is the current category.

The [[HOME]] and [[APLET]] menu keys switch to Home and Aplet variables. The □ symbol indicates what is "on": [[HOME]] means that the Home variables are displayed.

The Home variables are the ones you most commonly use while doing calculations in Home. Any value (or other data) you store must be stored in a variable of the correct type.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Available Names</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Complex</td>
<td>Z1 through Z9 and Z0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Graphic</td>
<td>G1 through G9 and G0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library</td>
<td>aplets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List</td>
<td>L1 through L9 and L0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Matrix</td>
<td>M1 through M9 and M0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modes</td>
<td>The MODES screen (□ □ [MODES]) stores values in these variables.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notepad</td>
<td>User-provided.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Program</td>
<td>User-provided.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Real</td>
<td>A through Z and θ.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Home variables retain their values regardless of context: Home, the aplets, and the editors recognize the Home variables and retain whatever was last stored in them. This sharing allows you to work on the same problem in different places (such as Home and the Function aplet) without having to update a variable whenever it is recalculated.

If you have not stored anything in a real variable, then it contains the value zero. (It is never "empty.")

**To access a Home variable**

1. Press **VAR** to display the VAR menu. Set {{HOME}}, if necessary by pressing {{HOME}}.

2. Use ▼ and ▲ to scroll through the alphabetical list of categories. To skip directly to a starting letter, press a letter key. To switch between the category list (left) and the variable list (right), use ▶ and ◄.

3. Highlight the name of the variable you want.
   - To copy the name of the variable into the edit line, press {{OK}}. (NAME is set: the menu label shows {{NAME}}).

To copy the value of the variable into the edit line, set VALUE (press {{VALUE}} to make it {{VALUE}}) and press {{OK}}.

---

2-8 Mathematical Calculations
Aplet Variables

The variable types in the table below are aplet variables that you use to define aplet functions and to store some kinds of aplet data. They are usually found in the Symbolic view or the Numeric view of an aplet.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aplet Category</th>
<th>Available Names</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>F1 through F9 and F0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Symbolic view)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parametric</td>
<td>X1, Y1 through X9, Y9 and X0, Y0 (Symbolic view)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polar</td>
<td>R1 through R9 and R0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Symbolic view)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sequence</td>
<td>U1 through U9 and U0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Symbolic view)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solve</td>
<td>E1 through E9 and E0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Symbolic view)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Statistical data</td>
<td>C1 through C9 and C0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Numeric view)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As you load new aplets in the HP 38G, their names and variables will be added to the VAR menu.

In addition, there are other aplet variables that are record settings, such as those in the Setup views. These types of variables (like NumStart and Xtick) are listed in chapter 8, Programming, since you do not need to know their names except when programming.
To access an aplet variable

The {APLET} menu key in the VAR menu switches the menu list to aplet variables. The □ symbol indicates what is "on": {APLE□} means that aplet variables are displayed.

1. Open the aplet whose variable you want to recall.
2. Press [VAR] to display the VAR menu. Set {APLE□}, if necessary by pressing {APLET}.

3. Highlight the view on the left side. If you're not sure which view it's in, just scroll through the view names and check the names of the variables on the right.
4. Press [{OK}] or ▶ to switch to the list of variable names on the right side.
5. Highlight the name of the variable you want. To copy its name, turn on {NAM□}. To retrieve its value, turn on {VALUE□}. Press [{OK}].

You can do this in Home if the aplet you want is current; that is, it was the last one open.

Symbolic Calculations

Formal Names

A formal name acts as a placeholder—it does not represent a value, just a symbol. In Home or in a program, the expression \((s1\times s2)^2\) always returns the expression \((s1\times s2)^2\). The real variables in \((A\times B)^2\), on the other hand, are evaluated to a number, the value of which depends on what is currently stored in \(A\) and \(B\).

Note

Remember that there is always a value in a real variable, even if it is zero.
You can mix formal names and real variables. Evaluating 
\((A*s2)^2\) will substitute a number for \(A\) but not for \(s2\).

If you want to evaluate an expression like \((s1*s2)^2\)
numerically, you can do so using the \(\text{ln}(\text{where})\) command,
listed in the MATH menu under the Symbolic category. For
instance, if you wanted \(s1 = 3\) and \(s2 = 4\), you would enter
\((s1*s2)^2 \mid (s1=3, s2=4)\). (The \(=\) symbol is in the CHARS
menu: press \(\text{[] [CHARS]} \{\text{OK}\}\).

**Indefinite Integrals**

To find the indefinite integral (with a symbolic rather than
numeric result), use formal variables (that is, \(s0\) through \(s5\))
for a limit of integration. For instance, to compute
\[ \int (6x - 5)dx \]
enter the integration as \(\int (0, s1, 6*X^2-5, X)\).
0 and \(s1\) are the lower and upper limits, and \(X\) is the variable
of integration.

1. Enter the the integration expression in the Home edit line.
   (The \(\int\) symbol in the the CHARS menu.)
2. Press \([\text{ENTER}]\), which produces an intermediate result.
3. Press \(\text{[COPY]} \{\text{ENTER}\}\) to complete the evaluation.

The result of \(\int (0,s1,6*X^2-5,X)\) should be
\(-5*s1) + 6*(s1^3/3)\), that is, \(2x3-5x\). Translators: in Comma
mode: change syntax to use periods.

**Definite Integrals**

To find the definite integral (with a numeric result), use
numeric values (numbers or real variables containing
numbers) for both the upper and lower limits. For instance, if
you enter \(\int (-2,3,6*X^2-5,X)\) and press \([\text{ENTER}]\), the result is
45.

**Derivatives**

To find the symbolic derivative of an expression, use a formal
variable (\(s1\), etc.) to define the derivative. For example, to
find \(D_x(6x^2-5x)\), enter \(\partial s1 \ (6*s1^2-5*s1)\). The result is
\(6*(2*s1)-5\), which is equal to \(12x-5\).

If you use real variables or numbers in the derivative, the
calculator will find a numeric result.
Composition of Functions
You can define a function of another function using the Function aplet (MB Function). That is, \( f(g(x)) \) can be entered into the Symbolic view of Function as

\[
\begin{align*}
F1(X) &= expression1 \\
F2(X) &= expression2 \\
F3(X) &= F1(F2(X))
\end{align*}
\]

Using Math Functions

Selecting Functions
To enter a function, type it in or select its name from the MATH menu.

The MATH Menu
The MATH menu provides access to Math Functions, Programming Commands, and Programming Constants.

The MATH menu is organized by category. For each category of functions on the left, there is a list of function names on the right. The highlighted category is the current category.

- When you press [MATH], you see the menu list of Math Functions. The menu key {{MTH}} indicates that the Math Functions list is "on."
- To display the menu list of Program Commands, press {{CMDS}}. To display the menu list of Program Constants, press {{CONS}}. To re-display the Math Functions, press {{MTH}}.

The programming commands and programming constants are discussed in chapter 8, Programming.

2-12 Mathematical Calculations
To copy a function

1. Press [MATH] to display the MATH menu. The categories appear in alphabetical order. Use [▼] and [▲] to scroll through the categories. To skip directly to a starting letter, press a letter key.

2. The list of functions (on the right) applies to the currently highlighted category (on the left). Use [►] and [◄] to switch between the category list and the function list.

3. Highlight the name of the function you want and press {[OK]}. This copies the function name (and an initial parenthesis, if appropriate) to the edit line.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function Categories</th>
<th>•  Calculus</th>
<th>•  Loop</th>
<th>•  Statistics-Two Variable</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>•  Complex numbers</td>
<td>•  Matrices</td>
<td>•  Symbolic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>•  Constant</td>
<td>•  Polynomial</td>
<td>•  Tests</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>•  Hyperbolic trig</td>
<td>•  Probability</td>
<td>•  Trigonometry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>•  Lists</td>
<td>•  Real numbers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Math Functions by Category

Following are definitions for all categories of functions except List, Matrix, and Statistics, each of which appears in its own chapter. Except for the keyboard operations, which do not appear in the MATH menu, all other functions are listed by their category in the MATH menu.

Syntax

Each function’s definition includes its syntax, that is, the exact order and spelling of a function’s name, its delimiters (punctuation), and its arguments. Note that the syntax does not include spaces.
Keyboard Functions
The most frequently used functions appear on the keyboard. The keyboard functions are the only math functions that do not appear in the MATH menu. Many of the keyboard functions also accept complex numbers as arguments.

+ , - , * , /  Add, Subtract, Multiply, Divide. Also accept complex numbers. 
\( value_1 + value_2 \), etc.

[e^x]  Natural exponential. Also accepts complex numbers. 
\( e^{value} \)

[LN]  Natural logarithm. Also accepts complex numbers. 
\( \text{LN}(value) \)

[10^x]  Exponential (antilogarithm). Also accepts complex numbers. 
\( 10^{value} \)

[LOG]  Common logarithm. Also accepts complex numbers. 
\( \text{LOG}(value) \)

\( \text{SIN}(value) \), \( \text{COS}(value) \), \( \text{TAN}(value) \) Sine, cosine, tangent. Inputs and outputs depend on the current angle format (Degrees, Radians, or Grads).

\( \text{ASIN}(value) \) Arc sine: \( \sin^{-1}x \). Output ranges from \(-90^\circ\) to \(90^\circ\), \(-\pi/2\) to \(\pi/2\), or \(-100\) to \(100\) grads. Inputs and outputs depend on the current angle format. Also accepts complex numbers.

\( \text{ACOS}(value) \) Arc cosine: \( \cos^{-1}x \). Output ranges from \(0^\circ\) to \(180^\circ\), \(0\) to \(\pi\), or \(0\) to \(200\) grads. Inputs and outputs depend on the current angle format. Also accepts complex numbers.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[ATAN]</td>
<td>Arc tangent: ( \tan^{-1}x ). Output ranges from (-90^\circ) to (90^\circ), (-\pi/2) to (\pi/2), or (-100) to (100) grads. Inputs and outputs depend on the current angle format. Also accepts complex numbers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>([x^2])</td>
<td>Square. Also accepts complex numbers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\sqrt{x})</td>
<td>Square root. Also accepts complex numbers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>([\pi])</td>
<td>Pi, a constant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>([x^{-1}])</td>
<td>Multiplicative inverse (reciprocal). For a complex number, the reciprocal is ( \left(\frac{x}{x^2 + y^2}, \frac{-y}{x^2 + y^2}\right) ).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(-x)</td>
<td>Negation. Also accepts complex numbers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(x^y)</td>
<td>Power ((x) raised to (y). Also accepts complex numbers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ABS]</td>
<td>Absolute value. For a complex number, this is (\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\sqrt{x})</td>
<td>Takes the (n)th root of (x).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example: \(3 \boxed{\sqrt{x}}\ 8\) returns 2.
You will find the symbols for the calculus functions derivative and integral in the CHARS menu ([^ [CHARS]) as well as the MATH menu.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| \( \partial \) | Differentiates expression with respect to the variable of differentiation. Use a formal variable (s1, etc.) for a non-numeric result. | \( \partial \text{variable(expression)} \) 
Example: \( \partial s1(s1^2+3s1) \) returns \( 2s1+3 \) |
| \( f \) | Integrates expression from lower to upper limits with respect to the variable of integration. To find the definite (numeric) integral, both limits must have numeric values (that is, be numbers or real variables). To find the indefinite integral, one of the limits must be a formal variable (s1, etc.). | \( f(\text{lower,upper,expression,variable}) \) 
Example: \( f(0,s1,2\times X+3,X) \) \( \text{[ENTER]} \) \( \text{[COPY]} \) \( \text{[ENTER]} \) finds the indefinite result \( 3s1+2(1/2) \) |
| TAYLOR | Calculates the nth order Taylor's polynomial of expression at the point where the given variable =0. | TAYLOR (expression,variable,n) |
Complex-Number Functions

These functions are for complex numbers only. You can also use complex numbers with all trigonometric and hyperbolic functions, and with some real-number and keyboard functions. Enter complex numbers in the form (x,y), where x is the real part and y is the imaginary part.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ARG</td>
<td>Argument. Finds the angle defined by a complex number. Inputs and outputs use the current angle format in Modes.</td>
<td>( \text{ARG} \ (r, \theta) )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONJ</td>
<td>Complex conjugate. Conjugation is the negation (sign reversal) of the imaginary part of a complex number.</td>
<td>( \text{CONJ} \ (x, y) )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IM</td>
<td>Imaginary part, y, of a complex number, (x,y).</td>
<td>( \text{IM} \ (x, y) )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RE</td>
<td>Real part x, of a complex number, (x, y).</td>
<td>( \text{RE} \ (x, y) )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Constants

The HP 38G has an internal numeric representation for these constants.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>e</strong></td>
<td>Natural logarithm base. Internally represented as 2.71828182846.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>i</strong></td>
<td>Imaginary value for ( \sqrt{-1} ), the complex number (0,1).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MAXREAL</strong></td>
<td>Maximum real number. Internally represented as ( 9.9999999999 \times 10^{69} ).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MINREAL</strong></td>
<td>Minimum real number. Internally represented as ( 1 \times 10^{-69} ).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>( \pi )</strong></td>
<td>The ratio perimeter : diameter. Internally represented as 3.14159265359.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Hyperbolic Trigonometry

The hyperbolic trigonometry functions can also take complex numbers as arguments.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ACOSH</td>
<td>Inverse hyperbolic cosine: $\cosh^{-1}x$.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALOG</td>
<td>Antilogarithm (exponential). This is more accurate than $10^x$ due to limitations of the power function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASINH</td>
<td>Inverse hyperbolic sine: $\sinh^{-1}x$.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATANH</td>
<td>Inverse hyperbolic tangent: $\tanh^{-1}x$. If the input is ±1, an Infinite Result occurs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COSH</td>
<td>Hyperbolic cosine: $(e^x + e^{-x})/2$.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SINH</td>
<td>Hyperbolic sine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TANH</td>
<td>Hyperbolic tangent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXP</td>
<td>Natural exponential. This is more accurate than $e^x$ due to limitations of the power function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXPM1</td>
<td>Exponent minus 1: $e^x - 1$. This is more accurate than EXP when $x$ is close to zero.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LNP1</td>
<td>Natural log plus 1: $\ln(x+1)$. This is more accurate than LN when $x$ is close to zero.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**List Functions**  These functions are for list data stored in list variables. See chapter 7, Using Lists.

**Loop Functions**  The loop functions display a result after evaluating an expression a given number of times.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>ITERATE</strong></td>
<td>Repeatedly (the specified #times) evaluates an expression in terms of variable. The value for variable is updated each time, starting with initialvalue. ITERATE (expression, variable, initialvalue, #times)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>RECURSE</strong></td>
<td>Provides a method of defining a sequence without using the Symbolic view of the Sequence aplet. RECURSE (sequencename, term-n, term1, term2) Example: RECURSE (U, U(N-1)*N, 1, 2) {STO} U1 (N) This produces the factorial U1 (1) = 1 U1 (2) = 2 U1 (N) = U1 (N-1) * N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Σ</strong></td>
<td>Summation. Finds the sum of expression with respect to variable from initialvalue to finalvalue. Σ (variable=initialvalue, finalvalue, expression) Example: Σ (c=1, 5, c^2) returns 55.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Matrix Functions**  These functions are for matrix data stored in matrix variables. See chapter 8, Using Matrices.
### Polynomial Functions

Polynomials are products of constants (*coefficients*) and variables raised to powers (*terms*).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>POLYCOEF</td>
<td>Polynomial coefficients. Returns the coefficients for the polynomial with the specified <em>roots</em>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>POLYCOEF([roots])</td>
<td>Example: to find the polynomial with roots 2, -3, 4, -5: POLYCOEF([2, -3, 4, -5]) returns [1, 2, -25, -26, 120], representing (x^4+2x^3-25x^2-26x+120).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POLYEVAL</td>
<td>Polynomial evaluation. Evaluates a polynomial with the specified <em>coefficients</em> for the <em>value</em> of <em>x</em>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>POLYEVAL([coefficients], value)</td>
<td>Example: for (x^4+2x^3-25x^2-26x+120): POLYEVAL([1, 2, -25, -26, 120], 8) returns 3432.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POLYFORM</td>
<td>Polynomial form. Creates a polynomial in <em>variable1</em> from <em>expression</em>. Can express the coefficients as a polynomial in <em>variable2</em>. (The coefficients of the coefficients can be expressed as polynomials in <em>variable3</em>, etc.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>POLYFORM(expression, variable1, ..., variable-n)</td>
<td>Example: POLYFORM((X+1)^2+1, X) returns (X^2+2+X+1).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POLYROOT</td>
<td>Polynomial roots. Returns the roots for the <em>n</em>th-order polynomial with the specified <em>n</em>+1 <em>coefficients</em>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>POLYROOT([coefficients])</td>
<td>Example: for (x^4+2x^3-25x^2-26x+120): POLYROOT([1, 2, -25, -26, 120]) returns [2, -3, 4, -5].</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Probability Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>COMB</td>
<td>Number of combinations (without regard to order) of ( n ) things taken ( r ) at a time, ( n!/(r!(n-r)) ).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>!</td>
<td>Factorial of a positive integer. For non-integers, ( ! = \Gamma(x + 1) ).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PERM</td>
<td>Number of permutations (with regard to order) of ( n ) things taken ( r ) at a time, ( n!/(n-r)! ).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RANDOM</td>
<td>Random number (between zero and 1). Produced by a pseudo-random number sequence. Becomes the seed for the next random number. You can set the seed using the command RANDSEED.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UTPC</td>
<td>Upper-Tail Chi-Squared Probability given degrees of freedom, evaluated at value. Returns the probability that a ( \chi^2 ) random variable is greater than value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UTPF</td>
<td>Upper-Tail Snedecor's F Probability given numerator degrees of freedom and denominator degrees of freedom (of the F distribution), evaluated at value. Returns the probability that a Snedecor's F random variable is greater than value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UTPN</td>
<td>Upper-Tail Normal Probability given mean and variance, evaluated at value. Returns the probability that a normal random variable is greater than value for a normal distribution. (The variance is the square of the standard deviation.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UTPT</td>
<td>Upper-Tail Student's t Probability given degrees of freedom, evaluated at value. Returns the probability that the Student's t random variable is greater than value.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Real-Number Functions

Some real-number functions can also take complex arguments.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| CEILING  | Smallest integer greater than, equal to `value`.  
  \[
  \text{CEILING}(value) 
  \] |
| DEG→RAD  | Degrees to radians. Converts `value` from Degrees angle format to Radians angle format.  
  \[
  \text{DEG→RAD}(value) 
  \] |
| FLOOR    | Greatest integer less than or equal to `value`.  
  \[
  \text{FLOOR}(value) 
  \] |
| FNROOT    | Function root-finder (like Solver aplet). Finds the value for the given `variable` at which `expression` most nearly evaluates to zero. Uses `guess` as initial estimate.  
  \[
  \text{FNROOT}(expression, variable, guess) 
  \] |
| FRAC     | Fractional part.  
  \[
  \text{FRAC}(value) 
  \] |
| HMS→     | Hours-minutes-seconds to decimal. Converts a number or expression in `H.MMSSs` format (time or angle that can include fractions of a second) to `x,x` format (number of hours or degrees with a decimal fraction).  
  \[
  \text{HMS→}(H.MMSSs) 
  \] |
| →HMS     | Decimal to hours-minutes-seconds. Converts a number or expression in `x,x` format (number of hours or degrees with a decimal fraction) to `H.MMSSs` format (time or angle up to fractions of a second).  
  \[
  \rightarrow\text{HMS}(x.x) 
  \] |
| INT      | Integer part.  
  \[
  \text{INT}(value) 
  \] |
| MANT     | Mantissa (significant digits) of `value`.  
  \[
  \text{MANT}(value) 
  \] |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MAX</td>
<td>Maximum. The greater of two values.</td>
<td>MAX(value1, value2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MIN</td>
<td>Minimum. The lesser of two values.</td>
<td>MIN(value1, value2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOD</td>
<td>Modulo. The remainder of value1/value2.</td>
<td>value1 MOD value2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%</td>
<td>x percent of y; that is, xy/100.</td>
<td>% (x, y)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%CHANGE</td>
<td>Percent change from x to y, that is, 100(y-x)/x.</td>
<td>%CHANGE (x, y)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%TOTAL</td>
<td>Percent total: (100)y/x. What percentage of x is y.</td>
<td>%TOTAL (x, y)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RAD→DEG</td>
<td>Radians to degrees. Converts value from one angle format to another.</td>
<td>RAD→DEG (value)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROUND</td>
<td>Rounds value to decimal places. Accepts complex numbers.</td>
<td>ROUND (value, places)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIGN</td>
<td>Sign of value. If positive, the result is +1. If negative, -1. If zero, result is zero. For a complex number, this is the unit vector in the direction of the number ( \frac{x}{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}}, \frac{y}{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}} ).</td>
<td>SIGN(value)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRUNCATE</td>
<td>Truncates value to decimal places. Accepts complex numbers.</td>
<td>TRUNCATE (value, places)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XPON</td>
<td>Exponent of value.</td>
<td>XPON (value)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Statistics-Two  These are functions for use with two-variable statistics. See chapter 5, Statistics.

Symbolic Functions  The symbolic functions are used for symbolic manipulations of expressions. The variables can be formal or numeric, but the result is usually in symbolic form (not a number). You will find the symbols for the symbolic functions = and l (where) in the CHARS menu (□ [CHARS]) as well as the MATH menu.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>= (equals)</td>
<td>Sets an equality for an equation. This is not a logical operator. (See the Test category.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISOLATE</td>
<td>Isolates the first occurrence of variable in expression and returns an equation, variable=value. The result is a general solution that represents multiple solutions by including the (formal) variables s1 to represent any sign and n1 to represent any integer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LINEAR?</td>
<td>Tests whether expression is linear for the specified variable. Returns 0 (false) or 1 (true).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QUAD</td>
<td>Solves quadratic expression for variable and returns an equation, variable=newexpression. The result is a general solution that represents both positive and negative solutions by including the (formal) variable s1 to represent any sign, + or −.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QUOTE</td>
<td>Encloses an expression that should not be evaluated numerically.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l (where)</td>
<td>Evaluates expression where each given variable is set to the given value. Allows numeric evaluation of a symbolic expression.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

expression | (variable1=value1,variable2=value2,...)
**Test Functions**  The test functions are *logical* operators that always return either a 1 (*true*) or a 0 (*false*).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;</code></td>
<td>Less than. Returns 1 if true, 0 if false.</td>
<td><code>value1&lt;value2</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;=</code></td>
<td>Less than or equal to. Returns 1 if true, 0 if false.</td>
<td><code>value1&lt;=value2</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>==</code></td>
<td>Equals (logical test). Returns 1 if true, 0 if false.</td>
<td><code>value1==value2</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>=</code></td>
<td>Not equal to. Returns 1 if true, 0 if false.</td>
<td><code>value1!=value2</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&gt;</code></td>
<td>Greater than. Returns 1 if true, 0 if false.</td>
<td><code>value1&gt;value2</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&gt;=</code></td>
<td>Greater than or equal to. Returns 1 if true, 0 if false.</td>
<td><code>value1&gt;=value2</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>AND</strong></td>
<td>Compares <code>value1</code> and <code>value2</code>. Returns 1 if they are both non-zero, otherwise returns 0.</td>
<td><code>value1 AND value2</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IFTE</strong></td>
<td>If <code>expression</code> is true, do the <code>trueclause</code>; if not, do the <code>falseclause</code>.</td>
<td><strong>IFTE</strong> (<code>expression</code>, <code>trueclause</code>, <code>falseclause</code>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Example:</em> IFTE (<code>X&gt;0</code>, <code>X^2</code>, <code>X^3</code>)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>NOT</strong></td>
<td>Returns 1 if <code>value</code> is zero, otherwise returns 0.</td>
<td><strong>NOT</strong> <code>value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>OR</strong></td>
<td>Returns 1 if either <code>value1</code> or <code>value2</code> is non-zero, otherwise returns 0.</td>
<td><code>value1 OR value2</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>XOR</strong></td>
<td>Exclusive OR. Returns 1 if either <code>value1</code> or <code>value2</code> — but not both of them—is non-zero, otherwise returns 0.</td>
<td><code>value1 XOR value2</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Trigonometry Functions**

The trigonometry functions can also take complex numbers as arguments. For SIN, COS, TAN, ASIN, ACOS, and ATAN, see the Keyboard category (all these functions have keys).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ACOT</td>
<td>Arc cotangent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACOT(\textit{value})</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACSC</td>
<td>Arc cosecant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACSC(\textit{value})</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASEC</td>
<td>Arc secant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASEC(\textit{value})</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COT</td>
<td>Cotangent: (\cos x/\sin x).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COT(\textit{value})</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSC</td>
<td>Cosecant: (1/\sin x)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSC(\textit{value})</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEC</td>
<td>Secant: (1/\cos x)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEC(\textit{value})</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Plotting and Exploring Functions

Types of Plots

Graphing is at the heart of the HP 38G. All of the built-in aplets do graphing. This chapter considers the four main built-in aplets:

- Function,
- Parametric,
- Polar, and
- Sequence.

The Solve aplet and Statistics aplet, which also include graphing, are covered in separate chapters.

Defining a Problem

You start with an aplet and a mathematical function to explore, like \( y = mx + b \).

General Steps

1. From the Library (LIB), open the aplet you want. This determines the type of function you can enter and plot.

2. In the Symbolic view (SYMB), enter or select an expression. Check the angle units in the Symbolic Setup (\( \square \) [SETUP-SYMB]).

3. In the Plot view (PLOT), display the graph. There are menu keys to explore by tracing and zooming. Optional: Specify graph settings in the Plot Setup (\( \square \) [SETUP-PLOT]).

4. Explore a table of numeric values in the Numeric view (NUM). Optional: specify table settings in the Numeric Setup (\( \square \) [SETUP-NUM]).

5. All information is automatically stored until you change it. To preserve the complete aplet as you have set it up, use the Library to name and save the aplet (chapter 1).
Select an Aplet

Select the aplet appropriate to your problem: Open the Library ([LIB]), highlight the name of an aplet, and press [{START}] (or [ENTER]).

- **Function**. This aplet can define rectangular equations of the form \( y = f(x) \).

- **Parametric**. This aplet can define parametric expressions, which define equations over time, \( t \). They take the forms \( x = f(t) \) and \( y = g(t) \).

- **Polar**. This aplet can define polar expressions, which graph equations in terms of an angle \( \theta \).

- **Sequence**. This aplet can define sequence functions, which are defined in terms of \( n \) or in terms of the previous terms in the sequence. Sequence plotting produces either stairstep graphs \( (n, U_n) \) or cobweb graphs \( (U_{n-1}, U_n) \).

- **Other aplets**. You can load or create other aplets besides those that are built in. Those you create yourself will be based on an existing aplet, filled with data and then named (if you like).

Define an Expression (Symbolic View)

The Symbolic view is the defining view for Function, Parametric, Polar, and Sequence aplets. The other views are derived from the symbolic expression.

You can define up to ten different functions for each Function, Parametric, Polar, and Sequence aplets. You can graph any number of functions (in the same aplet) simultaneously by checkmarking them.
To define the expression

1. Display the Symbolic view ([SYM]). If the highlight is on an existing expression, scroll to an empty line—unless you don’t mind writing over the expression. Or, clear one line ([DEL]) or all lines ([CLEAR]).

2. Make sure your function is in the form "y = " . For example, given the equation $9x + y - 11 = 0$ , you would rearrange it to $y = f(x) = -9x + 11$ . Type in just the expression $(-9x+11)$ for the right side.

   - **For a Function definition**, enter an expression to define $F(X)$ . The only independent variable in the expression is $X$ .
   - **For a Parametric definition**, enter a pair of expressions to define $X(T)$ and $Y(T)$ . The only independent variable in the expressions is $T$ .
   - **For a Polar definition**, enter an expression to define $R(\theta)$ . The only independent variable in the expression is $\theta$ .
   - **For a Sequence definition**, enter the first, second, and $n$th terms for $U$ (U1, or...U9, or U0). Define a sequence function in terms of $N$ or of the prior terms, $U(N-1)$ and $U(N-2)$ . The expressions should produce real-valued sequences with integer domains.

3. Press [ENTER] or {OK} to enter the expression into the list. *All checkmarked expressions will be plotted.*
Symbolic View Keys

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>{EDIT}</td>
<td>Copies the highlighted expression to the edit line for editing. Press {OK} when done.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{CHK}</td>
<td>Checks/uncHECKs the current expression (or set of expressions). Only the checked expression(s) are evaluated in the Plot and Numeric views.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{X}, {T}, {θ}, {N}</td>
<td>Typing aids for the independent variable. Or, you can use the X key on the keyboard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{U1}...{U9}, {U0}</td>
<td>Additional typing aids for variables in the Sequence aplet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{N−1}, {N−2}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{SHOW}</td>
<td>Displays the current expression in standard mathematical form.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{EVAL}</td>
<td>Symbolically evaluates the variables of the current expression.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VAR</td>
<td>Menus for entering variable names, contents of variables, or math operations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[CHARS]</td>
<td>Displays special characters. To type one, place the cursor on it and press {OK}.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[CLEAR]</td>
<td>Deletes all expressions in the list or clears the edit line (if it was in use).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Angle Measure Setup

For the Function, Parametric, Polar, and Sequence aplets, the only setting for the Symbolic view is the angle measure. This is significant only if any trigonometric function is used.

To check or change the angle measure, press [SETUP-SYMB]. The choices are Radians, Degrees, and Grads. This setting can affect what the graph looks like, as well as what the numerical values are.
Evaluating Expressions

In Aplets

In the Symbolic view, a variable is a symbol only, and does not represent one specific value.

If a variable contains another variable in it, then \{\text{EVAL}\} substitutes it as shown in this example.

\textit{In Function Symbolic view, enter these three expressions.}

\textit{Highlight F3.}

\{\text{EVAL}\}

\textit{In Home}

You can also evaluate any expression in Home by entering it into the edit line and pressing \text{ENTER}. For example, in Home type \text{F3 (X) \text{ENTER}} to evaluate the above expression. This will fully evaluate the expression, substituting any stored values for A and B and X.
Examples: Defining Expressions

**Function Example**

Define \( x^3 - 2x + 3 \).

Enter this expression as the right side of the equation in the Symbolic view.

In the Symbolic view of the Function aplet, highlight a line (or clear the lines) and enter the expression.

Remember that the equation that the HP 38G evaluates must be in the form \( f(x) = \text{expression in terms of } x \).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Given this expression...</th>
<th>Rearrange it to...</th>
<th>And enter...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( 3x + 2y - 4 = 0 )</td>
<td>( y = -3/2x + 2 )</td>
<td>( -3/2x + 2 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( x^2 + 7x + 10 = 0 )</td>
<td>( y = x^2 + 7x + 10 )</td>
<td>( x^2 + 7x + 10 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( x^2 = 2x + 7 )</td>
<td>( y_1 = x^2 )</td>
<td>( F1(X) = X^2, )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( y_2 = 2x + 7 )</td>
<td>( F2(X) = 2x + 7, ) and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( y_3 = y_1 - y_2 )</td>
<td>( F3(X) = F1(X) - F2(X) )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Parametric Example**

Define \( x(t) = 3 \sin 3t \)
\( y(t) = 2 \sin 4t \).

In the Symbolic view of the Parametric aplet, highlight a line (or clear the lines) and enter the expressions.

---

3-6 Plotting and Exploring Functions
Polar Example  Define \( r = 2 \cos \theta \).

In the Symbolic view of the Polar aplet, highlight a line (or clear the lines) and enter the expression.

\[
\text{LIB} \text{ Select Polar} \\
\{\text{START}\} \\
2 \cos 4 \theta \\
\text{ENTER}
\]

Sequence Example  Define the Fibonacci sequence, in which each term (after the first two) is the sum of the preceding two terms:
\( f_1 = 1, f_2 = 1, \) and \( f_n = f_{n-1} + f_{n-2} \) for \( n \geq 3 \).

In the Symbolic view of the Sequence aplet, highlight a line (or clear the lines) and enter the expressions.

\[
\text{LIB} \text{ Select Sequence} \\
\{\text{START}\} \\
1 \text{ ENTER} 1 \text{ ENTER} \\
\{U1\} \{((N-1))\} + \\
\{U1\} \{((N-2))\} \text{ ENTER}
\]

Plotting

Plot the Expression (Plot View)

After entering and selecting (checkmarking) the expression in the Symbolic view, press [PLOT]. To adjust the appearance of the graph or the interval that is displayed, you can change the Plot Setup (page 3-18).

Comparing Plots

You can plot up to ten expressions at the same time. Simply checkmark all those expressions you want to be plotted together.

Pausing a Plot

Press \{PAUSE\} or [ON] to interrupt plotting. Press \{CONT\} to continue plotting. Press [PLOT] to start the plotting over.

Erasing a Plot

Press \# [CLEAR] to erase a plot.
Undefined Points

If, during plotting, a real value for the expression is not found, then that point is not plotted, and no line is connected through it.

Tracing a Plot

When a graph is newly drawn, TRACE mode is on. Pressing a cursor key will trace the crosshairs along the graph, displaying the coordinate values as they move.

Scrolling a Plot

In Function and Sequence aplets, you can scroll left and right beyond the edge of the window to see more of the graph.

Zooming

Press [P]LOT [ZOOM] for a choice of zooming options. To switch to a predefined axis scaling (such as Trig or Integer), press [ ] [VIEWS].

Examples: Plotting

Function Example

Plot the expression from the previous Function example, \( x^3 - 2x + 3 \). In Plot Setup, specify YRNG : \(-3.1 \ 5\) so that you can see more of the graph (the default values are \(-3.1\) and \(3.2\)). You can leave the other plot settings at their default values.

\[\text{[UB] Select Function}\]

\[\{\text{START}\}\]

Make sure the correct function is highlighted and checked.

\[\text{[SETUP-PLOT]}\]

\[\downarrow \uparrow \ 5 \ \text{ENTER}\]

\[\text{PLOT}\]

\[\rightarrow \ 6 \ \text{times}\]

(The cursor starts in the center of the X-range and traces the plot.)
**Parametric Example**  
Plot the expressions from the previous Parametric example, 
\[ x(t) = 3 \sin 3t \] \[ y(t) = 2 \sin 4t \]. Before plotting, however, reset the default plot settings by clearing the Plot Setup view.

![Select Parametric]

**Polar Example**  
Plot the expression from the previous Polar example, 
\[ r = 2 \cos \theta \]. Before plotting, however, reset the default plot settings by clearing the Plot Setup view.

![Select Polar]
Sequence Example

Plot the Fibonacci sequence from the previous Sequence example, \( U_1 = 1, U_2 = 1, \) and \( U_n = U_{n-1} + U_{n-2} \). In Plot Setup, first set the SEQPLOT to Stairstep, then try a Cobweb plot. Reset the default plot settings by clearing the Plot Setup view.

- A Stairstep graph plots \( n \) on the horizontal axis and \( U_n \) on the vertical axis.
- A Cobweb graph plots \( U_{n-1} \) on the horizontal axis and \( U_n \) on the vertical axis.

```
LIB Select Sequence

[[START]]
Make sure the correct function is highlighted and checked.

**[SETUP-PLOT]**

**[CLEAR]**

PLOT
```

Now set SEQPLOT to Cobweb and see the difference.

```
**[SETUP-PLOT]**

[[CHOOS]]
Select Cobweb

PLOT
```

3-10  Plotting and Exploring Functions
Exploring the Plot

Plot view (press \[ \text{PLOT} \] or \[ \text{VIEWS} \]) gives you a selection of menu keys to explore a graph further (for the checkmarked expressions in the Symbolic view). The options vary from aplet to aplet.

### PLOT View Keys

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[^{\text{CLEAR}}]</td>
<td>Erases the plot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[^{\text{VIEWS}}]</td>
<td>Offers additional pre-defined views for splitting the screen and for scaling (&quot;zooming&quot;) the axes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[^{\text{远}}], [^{\text{近}}]</td>
<td>Moves cursor to far left or far right.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[^{\text{ZOOM}}]</td>
<td>Displays ZOOM menu list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[^{\text{TRACE}}]</td>
<td>Turns Trace mode on/off. The ■ appears when Trace mode is on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[^{\text{X, Y}}]</td>
<td>Displays the cursor’s coordinate position. Press [^{\text{MENU}}] to restore the menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[^{\text{FCN}}]</td>
<td>Function aplet only: Turns on menu list for root-finding functions (see &quot;Interactive Root-Finding,&quot; later in this chapter).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[^{\text{DEFN}}]</td>
<td>Displays the current, defining expression. Press [^{\text{MENU}}] to restore the menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[^{\text{MENU}}]</td>
<td>Turns menu-key labels on and off. When the labels are off, any top-row key turns them back on.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Tracing

Many aplets have a Trace mode. Trace mode is on when a plot has just been drawn. When Trace mode is on, the crosshairs cursor follows just the plotted points when you press the ← or → keys. The cursor traces the function. The display also shows the current coordinate position (x, y) of the cursor.

If there is more than one curve displayed, press ▲ or ▼ to move between curves.

Note that tracing might not appear to exactly follow your plot if the resolution (in Plot Setup view) is set to Faster. This is because RES: FASTER plots in only every other column, whereas tracing always uses every column.

In Function and Sequence Aplets: You can also scroll (move the cursor) left or right beyond the edge of the display window in Trace mode, giving you a view of more of the plot.

![Crosshairs Cursor and Coordinates](image)
To turn on TRACE mode

- Trace mode \textit{and} the coordinate display are automatically set when a plot is drawn. At other times, set Trace mode by pressing \{\texttt{TRACE}\} to change the label to \{\texttt{TRAC}e\}. (If the menu labels are not displayed, press \{\texttt{MENU}\} first.)

- Turn off Trace mode by changing the menu label back to \{\texttt{TRACE}\}.

To turn on coordinates

- To turn on the display of the coordinates’ values at the current cursor position, press \{\texttt{(X,Y)}\}. To turn the coordinate display off again, press \{\texttt{MENU}\}.

Zooming

One of the menu key options in PLOT is \{\texttt{ZOOM}\}. Zooming redraws the plot on a larger or smaller scale, or on a heightened or widened scale. It is a shortcut for changing the Plot Setup, and it does change those settings.

With the Set Factors option you can specify the factors that determine the extent of zooming, and whether the zoom is centered about the cursor.

\textit{Not all ZOOM options are available in all aplets.}
Select an option and press {{OK}}.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Center</td>
<td>Recenters the plot around the current position of the crosshairs <em>without</em> changing the scale.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Box...</td>
<td>Lets you draw a box to define the zoom boundaries. Use the cursor keys to draw the box, and press {{OK}} to zoom in (see below).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In</td>
<td>Divides horizontal and vertical scales by the X-factor and Y-factor (in Set Factors, below). For instance, if zoom factors are 4, then zooming in results in 1/4 as many units depicted per pixel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Out</td>
<td>Multiplies horizontal and vertical scales by the X-factor and Y-factor (in Set Factors, below).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-Zoom In</td>
<td>Divides horizontal scale only, using X-factor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X-Zoom Out</td>
<td>Multiplies horizontal scale only, using X-factor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y-Zoom In</td>
<td>Divides vertical scale only, using Y-factor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y-Zoom Out</td>
<td>Multiplies vertical scale only, using Y-factor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Square</td>
<td>Changes the vertical scale to match the horizontal scale.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set Factors...</td>
<td>Sets the X-Zoom and Y-Zoom factors for zooming (multiplying for Zoom Out, dividing for Zoom In). Includes option to recenter the plot before zooming.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Un-zoom</td>
<td>Returns the display to the previous zoom.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To use Box Zoom

The Box Zoom option lets you draw a box around the area you want to zoom in on.

1. If necessary, press [{MENU}] to turn on the menu-key labels.

2. Press [{ZOOM}] and select Box . . .

3. Position the crosshairs into one corner of the box-to-be. Press [{OK}].

4. Use the cursor keys ([↓], etc.) to drag two sides of a box.

5. Press [{OK}] to zoom in on the boxed area.
Other Views for Scaling and Splitting the Graph

Other Scales
The preset viewing options ([VIEWS]) draw the plot using certain pre-defined axis scales. This is a shortcut for changing Plot Setup. For instance, if you have defined a trigonometric function, then you could select Trig to plot your function on a trigonometric scale.

[VIEWS] Options
Select an option and press [OK].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plot-Detail</td>
<td>Splits the screen into the plot and a close-up (see the next topic).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plot-Table</td>
<td>Splits the screen into the plot and the data table (see page 3-24).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overlay Plot</td>
<td>Plots the current expression(s) without erasing any pre-existing plot(s).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto Scale</td>
<td>Rescales the axes using autoscaling.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decimal</td>
<td>Rescales both axes so each pixel = 0.1 unit. Resets default values for XRN (−6.5 to 6.5) and YRN (−3.1 to 3.2). (Not in Sequence or Statistics.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Integer</td>
<td>Rescales horizontal axis only, making each pixel = 1 unit. (Not in Sequence or Statistics.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trig</td>
<td>Rescales horizontal axis so 1 pixel = π/24 radian, 7.5°, or 8.1/3 grads; rescales vertical axis so 1 pixel = 0.1 unit. (Not in Sequence or Statistics.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Splitting the Screen**

The Split Screen view can give you two simultaneous views of the plot.

1. Press [VIEWS]. Select Plot-Detail and press [OK]. The graph is plotted twice. You can now zoom in on the right side.

2. Press [MENU] [ZOOM] to choose the Zoom method and press [OK] or [ENTER]. This zooms the right side. Here is an example of split screen with zoom in.

![Split Screen Example](image)

- The Plot menu keys are available as for the full plot (for tracing, coordinate display, equation display, and so on).
- [←] or [→] moves the cursor to the far left or far right of the full plot.
- The {←} left-arrow menu key will convert the base plot (left side) to the scale of the zoomed plot (right side). (It does so by resetting the variables' minimum and maximum values in the Plot Setup.)

3. To un-split the screen, press [PLOT]. The left side takes over the whole screen.

**Overlaying Plots**

If you would like to plot over an existing plot *without erasing* that plot, then use [VIEWS] Overlay Plot instead of [PLOT]. Note that tracing follows only the current functions from the current aplet.
Setting Up the Plot (Plot Setup)

Press [SETUP- PLOT] to define any of the settings shown in the next two tables.

1. Use the arrow keys to move from field to field. Highlight the field to edit.
   - If there is a number to enter, type it in and press [ENTER] or [OK].
   - If there is an option to choose, press [CHOOS], highlight your choice, and press [ENTER] or [OK]. As a shortcut to [CHOOS], just highlight the field to change and press + to display and select the different choices.
   - If there is an option to turn on/off, press [CHK] to check or uncheck it.

2. Press [PAGE\down] to view more settings.
3. When done, press [PLOT] to view the new plot.

To reset settings

To reset the default values for all plot settings, press [CLEAR] in the Plot Setup view.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>[SETUP- PLOT] Settings</th>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>XRNG, YRNG, TRNG, ΘRNG, NRNG</td>
<td>For Function plot: Specifies the minimum and maximum horizontal (X) and vertical (Y) values for the plotting window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RES</td>
<td>For Function plots: Resolution. &quot;Faster&quot; plots in alternate pixel columns; &quot;More Detail&quot; plots in every pixel column.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TSTEP, ΘSTEP</td>
<td>For Parametric and Polar plots: intervals at which to use the independent variable to calculate the function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SEQPLOT</td>
<td>For Sequence plots: Stairstep or Cobweb types.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>XTI CK</td>
<td>Horizontal spacing for tickmarks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>YTI CK</td>
<td>Vertical spacing for tickmarks.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3-18 Plotting and Exploring Functions
Second-Page

Those items with space for a checkmark are settings you can turn on or off. Press \{PAGE\} to display the second page.

| SIMULT       | If more than one function is being plotted, plot them simultaneously (otherwise sequentially). |
| INV. CROSS   | When the crosshairs cross the plot, invert those pixels that are overlapping. |
| CONNECT      | Connect the plotted points. (Sequence always connects them.) |
| LABELS       | Label the axes with XRNG and YRNG values. |
| AXES         | Draw the axes. |
| GRID         | Draw grid points using XTICK and YTICK spacing. |

Interactive Root-Finding

You can find roots, intersections, slopes, and areas for a function in the Plot view of the Function aplet (and any Function-based aplets). The \{FCN\} operations act on the currently selected expression or on the graph being traced.

The results are saved in the variables Area, Extremum, Isect, Root, and Slope, so you can do further calculations with these results in the aplet or in Home.

To use a \{FCN\} operation

1. In Symbolic view in a Function aplet, select the expression (for Intersect, two expressions) whose curve you want to study. Or trace the curve you want to study.

2. Position the cursor where you want it to be before pressing \{FCN\}. If you cannot see the crosshairs, they might be on the axes. Press \[ or \] to move the cursor and make it visible.

3. Press \{FCN\}, then select an operation from the menu list and press \{OK\}.

4. To perform another operation, press \{MENU\} to turn the menu-key labels back on.
To move the cursor
To change the starting position of the cursor after having selected an operation, press ([MENU]), move the cursor, and re-select the FCN operation.

To clear shading
To remove the shading produced by the AREA operation, press [PLOT] to re-draw the plot.

FCN Operations

Root
Select Root to find the root x-value nearest the crosshairs. If no root is found, but only an extremum, then the result is labeled EXTR: instead of ROOT:. (The root-finder is also used in the Solve aplet. See also “Interpreting Results,” in chapter 4.) The resulting x-value is saved in a variable named Root.

Extremum
Select Extremum to find the maximum or minimum nearest the crosshairs. This displays the coordinate values and moves the crosshairs to the extremum. (This uses the derivative.) The resulting value is saved in a variable named Extremum.

Slope
Select Slope to find the numeric derivative at the point nearest the crosshairs. The result is saved in a variable named Slope.

Area
Select Area to find the numeric integral. (If there are two or more expressions checkmarked, then you will be asked to choose the second expression from a list that includes the x-axis.) Select a starting point, then move the cursor to shade a region between the curve and the x-axis (or another curve), and between the starting point and the current position. The shaded region will be between the two curves. The Area is the signed value of the shaded area. Areas below the x-axis are negative. The result is saved in a variable named Area.

Intersection
Select Intersection to find the intersection of two graphs nearest the crosshairs. (You need to have at least two selected expressions in Symbolic view.) Displays the coordinate values and moves the crosshairs to the intersection. (Uses Solve function.) The resulting x-value is saved in a variable named lsect.
Examples: Root-Finding with Plots

These examples of the interactive root-finding operations use the expression \( f(x) = x^2 - 1 \) in the Function aplet with default plot settings.

Select the Function aplet.

```
SYM
\{f(x)\} \[x^2\] \(-1\) ENTER
```

ROOT

\[\text{SETUP- PLOT}\]
\[\text{CLEAR}\]

```
PLOT
\{MENU\} \{FCN\}
Select Root \{OK\}
```

The crosshairs started at \((0, -1)\). The root nearest the crosshairs is \(x = -1\). The crosshairs have moved to \((-1,0)\).

EXTREMUM

\[\text{MENU} \{FCN\}\]

Select Extremum \{OK\}

```
EXTREM: \((0, -1)\)
```

SLOPE

\[\text{MENU} \{FCN\}\]

Select Slope \{OK\}

```
SLOPE: 0
```

The slope at the extremum (where the crosshairs are) is zero.
AREA

You move the cursor to the starting point first, then shade the area.

```
[[MENU]] [FCN]
Select Area... [OK]
[OK] to set starting point
<- 10 times
```

```
\text{AREA: } -0.666666666667
```

The shaded area has a value of $-0.666666666667$ (to 12-digit accuracy). It is negative because the region lies below the $x$-axis.

Enter a second expression, $f(x) = x^3$, in Function aplet, and find the intersection of it with $f(x) = x^2 - 1$.

```
Select the Function aplet.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SYMB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>{x}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

INTERSECT

You must specify whether to find the intersection with the second function or with the $x$-axis.

```
[PLLOT] [MENU] [FCN]
Select Intersection [OK]
```

```
Select the function $F(X) = X^3$ (not the $x$-axis) [OK].
```

3-22 Plotting and Exploring Functions
Using a Table of Numbers

Display a Table of Numbers (Numeric View)

After entering and selecting (checkmarking) the expression in the Symbolic view, press [NUM] to view a table of data values for the independent (X, T, Θ, or N) and dependent variables. To adjust the initial value or step size, change the Numeric Setup.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NUM View Keys</th>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>{{ZOOM}}</td>
<td>Displays ZOOM menu list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>{{BIG}}</td>
<td>Toggles between two character sizes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>{{DEFN}}</td>
<td>Displays the defining function expression for the highlighted column. To cancel this display, press {{DEFN}}.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The table adds columns for each additional expression that is checkmarked in the Symbolic view.

Press {{DEFN}} to display the expression that defines the function in the highlighted column.

Automatic Recalculation

You can enter any new value in the X column for the independent variable. When you then press [ENTER], the values for the dependent variables are recalculated, and the entire table is regenerated with a new interval between X values.
Exploring the Table of Numbers

**Zooming**

Zooming redraws the table of numbers in greater or lesser detail.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>In</strong></td>
<td>Decreases the intervals for the independent variable so a narrower range is shown. Uses the NUMZOOM factor in Numeric Setup.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Out</strong></td>
<td>Increases the intervals for the independent variable so that a wider range is shown. Uses the NUMZOOM factor in Numeric Setup.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Decimal</strong></td>
<td>Changes intervals for the independent variable to 0.1 unit. Starts at zero. (Shortcut to changing NUMSTART and NUMSTEP.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Integer</strong></td>
<td>Changes intervals for the independent variable to 1 unit. Starts at zero. (Shortcut to changing NUMSTEP.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Trig</strong></td>
<td>Changes intervals for independent variable to π/24 radian or 7.5 degrees or 81/3 grads. Starts at zero.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Un-zoom</strong></td>
<td>Returns the display to the previous zoom.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The display on the right is a Zoom In of the display on the left.
Splitting the Screen

1. In the Symbolic view of the appropriate aplet, make sure the function(s) you want are checkmarked.

2. Press \( \text{[VIEWS]} \). Select Plot-Table and press \{\text{[OK]}\}.

3. The \( \text{[Left]} \) and \( \text{[Right]} \) cursor keys move the crosshairs along the plot; the view of the table adjusts itself. The \( \text{[Up]} \) and \( \text{[Down]} \) cursor keys move the crosshairs from one graph to another.

4. To return to a full Numeric (or Plot) view, press \( \text{[NUM]} \) (or \( \text{[PLOT]} \)).

Setting Up the Table (Numeric Setup)

Press \( \text{[SETUP-NUM]} \) to define any of the settings shown in the table below. To reset the default values for all table settings, press \( \text{[CLEAR]} \).

1. Use the arrow keys to move from field to field. Highlight the field to edit.
   - If there is a number to enter, type it in and press \( \text{[ENTER]} \) or \{\text{[OK]}\}. To modify an existing number, press \{\text{EDIT}\}.
   - If there is an option to choose, press \{\text{[CHOOS]}\}, highlight your choice, and press \( \text{[ENTER]} \) or \{\text{[OK]}\).
   - **Shortcut**: Press the \{\text{[PLOT>}\} menu key to copy values from the Plot Setup into NUMSTART and NUMSTEP.

2. When done, press \( \text{[NUM]} \) to review the table of numbers.

To reset settings

To reset the default values for all table settings, press \( \text{[CLEAR]} \).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NUMSTART</td>
<td>Where to start the independent variable's first value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NUMSTEP</td>
<td>The size of the increment from one independent variable value to the next.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NUMTYPE</td>
<td>Type of numeric table: Automatic or Build Your Own. To build your own table, you must type each independent value into the table yourself.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NUMZOOM</td>
<td>Zoom factor (multiplies the scale for Zoom Out, divides for Zoom In).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Building Your Own Table of Numbers**

The default NUMTYPE is "Automatic", which fills the table with data for regular intervals of the independent (X, T, Θ, or N) variable. With NUMTYPE "Build Your Own", you fill the table yourself by typing in the independent-variable values you want, and the dependent values are then calculated and displayed.

**To format a table**

1. Start with an expression defined (in Symbolic view) in the aplet of your choice.
2. In the Numeric Setup ([SETUP-NUM]), choose NUMTYPE: Build Your Own.
3. Open the Numeric view ([NUM]). To clear existing data in the table, press [CLEAR].
4. Enter the independent values in the left-hand column.
   Type in the number and press [ENTER]. You do not have to enter them in order, because the {[SORT]} function can rearrange them. To insert a number between two others, use {[INS]}.

You enter numbers into the X column.

The defining expression for F1.

F1 entries are generated automatically.

---

3-26  Plotting and Exploring Functions
To clear data  Press □ [CLEAR] to erase the data from a table.

### “Build Your Own” Keys

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>{{EDIT}}</td>
<td>Puts the highlighted independent value (X, T, θ, or N) into the edit line. After you edit the number, press [ENTER].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{{INS}}</td>
<td>Inserts a row of zero values at the position of the highlight. Replace the zero by typing the number you want and pressing [ENTER].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{{SORT}}</td>
<td>Automatically rearranges the left-hand column into values in ascending (getting larger) or descending (getting smaller) order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{{BIG}}</td>
<td>Toggles between two character sizes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{{DEFN}}</td>
<td>Displays the defining function expression for the highlighted column.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ [CLEAR]</td>
<td>Deletes the highlighted row.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[DEL]</td>
<td>Clears all data from the table.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plotting and Exploring Functions  3-27
More Examples

Function Example

Plot the circle, \(x^2 + y^2 = 13\). Rearrange the equation to
\[y = \pm \sqrt{13 - x^2}\) . This must be entered as two expressions,
\[y = \sqrt{13 - x^2}\] and \[y = -\sqrt{13 - x^2}\) .

\[\text{LIB Select Function}\]
\[\text{SYM} 13 \{[x]\} \{x^2\} 2\]
\[\text{ENTER} -x \sqrt{13 - \{[x]\} \{x^2\} 2\] \[\text{ENTER}\]

\[\text{[SETUP- PLOT]}\]

(Check that the Plot settings are the defaults—if not, press \[\text{[CLEAR]}\].)

\[\text{PLOT}\]

The calculator plots the two expressions of the conic plot separately, sometimes producing a discontinuity in the graph. Specify a finer resolution to minimize these discontinuities. (The gaps are due to the sampling interval.)

\[\text{[SETUP-PLOT]}\]

\[\text{[CHOOS\}}\]

Select More Detail

3-28  Plotting and Exploring Functions
Function Example, continued

[SETUP-NUM]

(Check that the Numeric settings are the defaults—if not, press [CLEAR].)

[SETUP-NUM]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>X</th>
<th>F1</th>
<th>F2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>3.605551</td>
<td>3.605551</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.1</td>
<td>3.604164</td>
<td>3.604164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.2</td>
<td>3.599049</td>
<td>3.599049</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.3</td>
<td>3.583949</td>
<td>3.583949</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.4</td>
<td>3.568850</td>
<td>3.568850</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.5</td>
<td>3.553751</td>
<td>3.553751</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>.6</td>
<td>3.538652</td>
<td>3.538652</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plotting and Exploring Functions 3-29
Plot the two sets of equations below that describe the paths of two particles over time. Look at the interval between \( t = 0 \) and \( t = 6.5 \) seconds.

**LIB** Select **Parametric [SETUP-SYMB]**

Check that **Radians** is set.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{SYMB} & \quad 16 & \div & \quad 3 & \div & \quad 8 & \div & \quad 3 \\
\times & \quad \{\{T\}\} & \quad \text{ENTER} \\
4 & \times & \quad \{\{T\}\} & \quad \text{ENTER} \\
2 & \times & \quad \text{SIN} & \quad \{\pi\} & \div & \quad 2 & \times & \quad \{\{T\}\} & \quad \text{ENTER} \\
-x & \quad 3 & \times & \quad \text{COS} & \quad \{\pi\} & \div & \quad 2 & \times & \quad \{\{T\}\} & \quad \text{ENTER} \\
\end{align*}
\]

Use the Numeric view to determine whether the particles ever collide (that is, whether their paths cross at the same moment in time). Compare the \( T \) values when \( X_1 = X_2 \) and when \( Y_1 = Y_2 \). You can tell from the plot that the points of intersection are at or near \( X = 2 \) and \( Y = 3 \). If \( T \) is the same at these points, then the points collide.

**NUM**

Search for \( X_1 = 2 \) and \( X_2 = 2 \).

Move the highlight to \( X_1 = 1.866666 \).

You can see that \( X_2 = 2 \) when \( T = 1 \). Use ZOOM to home in on \( X_1 = 2 \).

---

3-30  Plotting and Exploring Functions
Parametric Example, continued

\{\text{ZOOM}\} \textbf{Select In \{OK\}}

\[\Delta \Delta\]

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|}
\hline
\text{T} & \text{X1} & \text{Y1} \\
\hline
1.175 & 2.2 & -3 \\
1.2 & 1.3333 & 1.4251 \\
1.225 & 0.0693 & -1.0763 \\
1.25 & 1.6666 & 1.875 \\
1.3 & 1.6666 & 1.0763 \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

You can now see that X1=2 when T=1.25, so the particles do not collide at X=2.

Now search for Y1=3 and Y2=3. You can use \{\text{ZOOM}\} \textbf{Out} to move more quickly through the columns, but \{\text{ZOOM}\} \textbf{In} again to find Y1=Y2=3.

\[\leftarrow \leftarrow \leftarrow \text{to highlight the Y2 column}\]

\[\downarrow \ldots \text{to highlight Y2=3}\]

Since Y1 and Y2 intersect (when Y=3) at the same value for T, the particles collide at T=2 seconds.
Polar Example  Plot the circle, $r = 3 (\sin^2 \theta + \cos^2 \theta)$.

LIB  Select Polar
[SETUP-SYMB]  
Check that Radians is set.

| SYMB | $\bullet$ ( $\sin \{ \theta \}$ ) |
| $x^2$ | $+$ $\cos \{ \theta \}$ |
| $x^2$ | ENTER |

PLOT

(If your plot does not look this, check that the Plot Setup has the default settings.)

NUM

(If your table does not look like this, make sure the Numeric Setup has the default settings.)
Generate a sequence to calculate the square root of 2 using the iterative relationship

\[(U_n) \times (U_{n-1}) = \frac{1}{2}(U_{n-1}^2 + a), \text{ where } a = 2.\]

Define this sequence in the HP 38G as

\[U1(N) = (U1(N-1)^2 + A)/(2 \times U1(N-1)),\]

and store 2 in \(A\).

The Sequence aplet finds the square root by evaluating this expression with successive values of \(N\) until the value for \(U1\) stops changing. In this case, the sequence converges at a value for \(\sqrt{2}\) starting with \(U_0\).

Start the sequence by setting \(U1(1)\) and \(U1(2)\) to 1.

1. **LIB** Select **Sequence**
   
   \[[\text{START}]]
   
   1 \text{ ENTER} 1 \text{ ENTER}
   
   \(\{(U1)\{(N-1)\} \times \{x^2\} + \{A\} \{Z\} \{A\} \{\} \{2\} \times \{U1\}\{N-1\} \{\} \{\} \text{ ENTER}\)

Store the value 2 in the real variable \(A\).

2. \{STOP\} \{ZA\} \text{ ENTER}

Set up a stairstep plot.

\[\text{SETUP- PLOT} \]

Check that the default values are set, including **Stairstep**.

(Press \[\text{CLEAR}\] to reset default values.)
As you trace the graph with the cursor keys, the crosshairs jump from N:1 to N:2 to N:3, and so on. The values for U1 change by smaller and smaller amounts until they converge.

\[
\begin{array}{c|c}
N & U1 \\
\hline
3 & 1.416667 \\
4 & 1.414214 \\
5 & 1.414214 \\
6 & 1.414214 \\
7 & 1.414214 \\
8 & 1.414214 \\
\hline
\end{array}
\]

Scroll down to see that the values for U1 remain the same for \( N \geq 6 \). Therefore, \( \sqrt{2} \) is 1.41421356237 to 12 digits of accuracy.

Compare the Stairstep plot (which plots N and U1(N)) to a Cobweb plot (which plots U1(N - 1) and U1(N)). Use autoscaling for the plot. The coordinate values and the Numeric view are identical to the Stairstep plot.

\[
\text{Set SEQPLOT to Cobweb.}
\]
Solve

The Solve aplet will solve an equation or an expression for its unknown variable. You define an equation or expression in Symbolic view, then supply values for all of the variables except one in Numeric view. Then Solve will find the remaining unknown.

As a simple example, consider the equation \( \text{force} = \text{mass} \times \text{acceleration} \) (that is, \( F = MA \)) in the Solve Symbolic view.

If force is 600 N and acceleration is 9.8 m/sec\(^2\), then pressing [{SOLV}] in the Solve Numeric view finds that the unknown mass must be 61.22 kg.

Furthermore, you can solve the equation for any one of its variables. You can solve the equation as many times as you want with new values and different unknowns.
Solving Equations

An equation contains an equals sign. Its solution is a value for the unknown variable that makes both sides equal the same value.

An expression does not contain an equals sign. Its solution is a root, that is, a value for the unknown variable that makes the expression equal to zero.

Define the Equation

You can define up to ten equations (or expressions), named E0 through E9. Each equation can contain up to 27 real variables, named A through Z or Θ.

To define an equation

1. In the Library ([LIB]), select the Solve aplet.

2. Display the Symbolic view ([SYMB]). If the highlight is on an existing equation, scroll to an empty line—unless you don’t mind writing over the equation. Or, clear one line ([DEL]) or all lines ([CLEAR]).

3. Enter a complete equation, including the equals sign. (The equals sign is available as a menu key.) Use only A through Z and Θ as variables’ names. Press [ENTER] or [OK] to complete the equation. Only one equation at a time can be checkmarked.

A Solve variable (E1 through E0) can also be defined in terms of other Solve variables. For instance, you could define E1 to be the sum of E2 and E3.
Symbolic View Keys

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(EDIT)</td>
<td>Copies the highlighted expression to the edit line for editing. Press (OK) when done.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(¥CHK)</td>
<td>Checks/unchcks the current expression. Only the checked expression is evaluated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(==)</td>
<td>Types an equals sign into the equation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(SHOW)</td>
<td>Displays the current equation in standard mathematical form.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(EVAL)</td>
<td>Evaluates the current equation by substituting other variables for all variables except the independent variable, which remains in symbolic form.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[VAR]</td>
<td>Menus for entering variable names, contents of variables, or math functions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[MATH]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[CHARS]</td>
<td>Displays special characters. To type one, highlight it and press (OK).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[DEL]</td>
<td>Deletes the highlighted equation or the current character in the edit line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[CLEAR]</td>
<td>Deletes all equations in the list or clears just the edit line, if it was active.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Angle Setting

The only setting for the Symbolic view is the angle measure. This is significant only if any of the equation’s variables contain trigonometric functions.

To check or change the angle measure, press [SETUP-SYMB]. The choices are Radians, Degrees, and Grads. This setting can affect the numeric solutions, as well as the graph.
Solve for the Unknown Variable

Assign values to all the variables except one. All of the variables must represent real values.

The unknown variable cannot be an index (as for a summation), limit (as for an integral), or placeholder variable (as for a derivative).

To solve for an unknown

1. Press [NUM] for the Numeric view. This displays all the variables and their values, if any.
2. For each variable except the unknown, type a number and press [{OK}].
3. Move the highlight to the unknown’s field and press [{SOLVE}]. The solution appears in the unknown’s field.
4. You can repeat steps 2 and 3, substituting different values and selecting a different unknown each time.

If there is no solution found, or you are looking for a different solution, then you need to supply an initial guess (see below).
### Numeric View Keys

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>{{EDIT}}</td>
<td>Copies the highlighted value to the edit line for editing. Press {{OK}} when done.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{{INFO}}</td>
<td>Displays a message about the solution (see &quot;Interpreting Results,&quot; next page).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{{PAGE}}</td>
<td>Displays other pages of variables, if any.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{{DEFN}}</td>
<td>Displays the current, defining expression. Press {{OK}} when done.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{{SOLVE}}</td>
<td>Finds the solution for the highlighted variable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEL</td>
<td>Clears highlighted variable to zero or deletes current character in edit line, if edit line was active.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[CLEAR]</td>
<td>Resets all variables' values to zero or clears the edit line, if cursor was in edit line.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Using an Initial Guess

You can obtain a faster and possibly more accurate solution if you supply an estimated value for the unknown variable before pressing {{SOLVE}}. Solve will look for a solution near the initial guess first.

- An initial guess is especially important in the case of a repeating, non-linear curve that could have more than one solution.
- Plot the equation to help you select an initial guess when you don’t know in which range to look for the solution.

### Number Format

You can change the number format for the Solve aplet in the Numeric Setup view. The options are the same as in Home MODES: Standard, Fixed, Scientific, and Engineering. For the latter three, you also specify how many digits of accuracy you want. See "Display Modes," in chapter 1 for more information.

You might find it handy to set a different number format for the Solve aplet if, for example, you define equations to solve for the time value of money. A Number Format of Fixed 2 would be appropriate in this case to handle monetary values.
Plotting the Equation

A plot shows you graphically where the solution(s) must be:

- If you defined an expression, then the solution (root) is where the graph intersects the x-axis.

- If you defined an equation, then there are two graphs, one for each side of the equation. The solution is where the two graphs intersect. (If one side of the equation is constant, then one of the graphs will be a straight line.)

To plot an equation

1. Define the equation to solve in the Symbolic view (SYMB).

2. If the equation uses trigonometric functions, set the angle measure in Symbolic Setup view (SETUP-SYMB).

3. Enter the known variables in the Numeric view (NUM).

4. Highlight the independent variable in the Numeric view.

5. Press [VIEWS] and select Auto Scale ([OK]) to plot the equation(s). Autoscaling usually gives you the best plot in Solve.
Interpreting Results

After Solve has returned a solution, press [{INFO}] in the Numeric view for more information. You will see one of the following three messages. Press [{OK}] to clear the message.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Condition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Zero</td>
<td>The Solve aplet found a point where the value of the equation (or the root of the expression) is zero within the calculator's 12-digit accuracy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sign Reversal</td>
<td>Solve found two points where the value of the equation has opposite signs, but it cannot find a point in between where the value is zero. This might be because either the two points are neighbors (they differ by one in the twelfth digit), or the equation is not real-valued between the two points. Solve returns the point where the value is closer to zero. If the value of the equation is a continuous real function, this point is Solve's best approximation of an actual root.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extremum</td>
<td>Solve found a point where the value of the equation approximates a local minimum (for positive values) or maximum (for negative values). This point may or may not be a root. Or: Solve stopped searching at ±9.9999999999E499, the largest number the calculator can represent.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If Solve could not find a solution, you will see one of the following two messages.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Condition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bad Guess(es)</td>
<td>No solution found. One or more of the initial guesses lie outside the domain of the equation. Therefore, the solution was not a real number or it caused an error.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constant?</td>
<td>No solution found. The value of the equation is the same at every point sampled.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Root-Finder at Work

You can watch the process of the root-finder calculating and searching for a root. Immediately after pressing \([\text{SOLVE}]\) to start the root-finder, press any key except [ON]. You will see two intermediate guesses and, to the left, the sign of the expression evaluated at each guess. For example:

\[
- -1.219330555745
+ -1.3111111149
\]

You can watch as the root-finder either finds a sign reversal or converges on a local minimum/maximum or does not converge at all. If there is no convergence in process, you might want to cancel the operation (press [ON]) and start over with a different initial guess.

Plotting to Find Guesses

The Plot view and the Plot Setup work as they do for the Function aplet. The main reason for plotting in the Solve aplet is to help you find solutions for those equations that have difficult-to-find or multiple solutions.

Example

Consider the equation of motion for an accelerating body,

\[
x = v_0 t + \frac{at^2}{2},
\]

where \(x\) is distance, \(v_0\) is initial velocity, \(t\) is time, and \(a\) is acceleration. This is actually \textit{two} equations, \(y = x\) and \(y = v_0 t + (at^2) / 2\).

Since this equation is quadratic for \(t\), there can be both a positive and a negative solution. However, we are concerned only with positive solutions, since only positive distance makes sense.
Select Solve

Find the solution for $T$ (time) when $X=30$, $V=2$, and $A=4$. Then highlight the independent variable, $T$.

Use the Plot view to find an initial guess for $T$. First set appropriate $X$ and $Y$ ranges in the Plot Setup. Since we have an equation, $X=V*T+A*T^2/2$, the plot will produce two graphs: one for $Y=X$ and one for $Y=V*T+A*T^2/2$. Since we have set $X=30$ in this example, one of the graphs will be $Y=30$. Therefore, make the YRNG -5 to 35. Keep the XRNG default of -6.5 to 6.5.

Move the cursor near the positive (right-side) intersection. This cursor value will be an initial guess for $T$.

The two points of intersection show that there are two solutions for this equation. However, only positive values for $x$ make sense, so we want to find the solution for the intersection on the right side of the $y$-axis.
Note the T-value is filled in with the position of the cursor from the Plot view.

Highlight the T-value.

Therefore, the time it takes a body to travel 30 m when it starts at 2 m/s and accelerates at 4 m/s\(^2\) is 3.40512483795 seconds (to 12 digits of accuracy).

Now you can continue using this equation to solve for another variable, such as velocity. How fast must a body's initial velocity be in order for it to travel 50 m within 3 seconds? Assume the same acceleration, 4 m/s\(^2\). Leave the last value of V as an initial guess.

Highlight the V value.

Highlight the X value. 50
## About Variables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Note</th>
<th>Be sure to check and define the values for all your Solve variables in the Numeric view each time you solve an equation.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Home Variables</td>
<td>You can use any of the real variables, A through Z and θ. Do not use variables defined for other types, such as M1 (a matrix variable).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Names of Variables</td>
<td>All Home variables (other than those for aplet settings, like Xmin and Ytick) are <em>global</em>, which means they are <em>shared</em> throughout the different contexts of the calculator. A value that is assigned to a Home variable anywhere remains with that variable wherever its name is used. Therefore, if you have defined a value for T (as in the above example) in another aplet or even another Solve equation, that value will show up in the Numeric view for this Solve equation. When you then redefine the value for T in this Solve equation, that value will apply to T in all other contexts (until it is changed again). This sharing allows you to work on the same problem in different places (such as Home and Solve) without having to update the value everywhere whenever it is recalculated.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Statistics

The Statistics aplet can store up to ten separate data sets at one time. It can do one-variable or two-variable statistical analyses of one or more sets of data.

- **In Numeric view:** Enter data values for one- or two-variable statistics (1VAR or 2VAR).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>n</th>
<th>C1</th>
<th>C2</th>
<th>C3</th>
<th>C4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>33</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>44</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>55</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **In Symbolic view:** Define which data columns make up a data set. The Symbolic views for one-variable (1VAR) and two-variable (2VAR) statistics are different:

  ![Symbolic View 1VAR](image)

  ![Symbolic View 2VAR](image)

- **In Plot view:** Plot one-variable data as histograms or box-and-whisker plots. Plot two-variable data as scatter plots. Two-variable data are analyzed according to one of seven different regression fits (or your own definition).
• *In Home:* You can also compute statistics values in Home and recall the values of specific statistics variables.

The values computed in the Statistics aplet are saved in variables, and many of these variables are listed by the \{STATS\} function in Numeric view.

**Example: Finding a Linear Equation to Fit Data**

Enter and analyze the advertising and sales data below. Compute statistics, fit a curve to the data, and predict the effect of more advertising on sales.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Advertising (minutes)</th>
<th>Resulting Sales ($)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>920</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>1100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>2265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>2890</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>2200</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Select Statistics

(If necessary, use [CLEAR] to clear two data columns)

Make sure that {2VAR} is on for two-variable statistics.

[{1VAR}]

2 [ENTER] 1 [ENTER] 3 [ENTER]
5 [ENTER] 5 [ENTER] 4 [ENTER]
▶ to move to next column
1400 [ENTER] 920 [ENTER]
1100 [ENTER] 2265 [ENTER]
2890 [ENTER] 2200 [ENTER]

SYMB

If necessary, [CLEAR] to clear previous definition of S1.

Note the default Fit is Linear ($mx+b$).

Accept the default definition for S1: C1 is the independent data and C2 is the dependent data. Select S1 by checkmarking it, if it is not already checked.

[{✓CHK}]

[SETUP-SYMB]

This view lets you choose the type of Fit. If necessary, choose Linear for S1FIT.
Find the mean advertising time (MEANX), the mean sales (MEANY), and the correlation coefficient (CORR) for the data fitting a straight line. The CORR value indicates how well the linear model fits the data.

\[
\text{MEANX is about 3.3 minutes and MEANY is about $1796$.}
\]

Scroll down to display CORR. CORR is 0.8995 to four significant digits.

This makes the mark for S1 more visible.

Select Auto Scale \([\{\text{OK}\}\})

(If \([\{\text{FIT}\}\}) is on, the regression line also appears.)

To find the regression curve (a curve to fit the data points) and regression values, set \([\{\text{FIT}\}\}) on, if it is not already.

This draws the regression line for the best linear fit.

Values for \(m\) and \(b\) are substituted into the regression expression for the Fit1 field.
Highlight Fit1 \{\{SHOW\}\}  

shows the full Fit1 expression. The slope (m) is 425.875. The y-intercept (b) is about 376.25.

Now find the predicted sales figure if advertising were to go up to 6 minutes. Switch to Home and use PREDY.

\{\{OK\}\}  
\begin{array}{l}
\text{HOME} \quad \text{MATH} \quad \text{S to highlight Stat-Two } \downarrow \uparrow \\
\text{to highlight PREDY}  \\
\{\{OK\}\} 6 \ \text{ENTER}
\end{array}

\begin{array}{l}
\text{PREDY(6)} \quad 2931.5
\end{array}

\begin{center}
\textbf{Entering Statistical Data}
\end{center}

You typically enter your data into columns in the Numeric view. Each column represents a variable named C1 through C9 and C0. After entering the data, you must define the data set in the Symbolic view. Data sets are named H1 through H5 for one-variable statistics, or S1 through S5 for two-variable statistics.

\begin{center}
\textbf{Note}
\end{center}

A data column must have at least four data points to provide valid two-variable statistics, or two data points for one-variable statistics.

You can also store statistical data values by copying lists from Home into Statistics data columns. For example, \{\{HOME \ L1 \ \{\{STO\uparrow\}\}\} C1 \text{ stores the list L1 into the data-column variable C1.}
One-Variable Data

To enter 1VAR data
Press [L1B] and select Statistics. Press [{START}] or [NUM].

1.

2. Set one-variable [{1VAR}] statistics. This menu key is a toggle: pressing 1VAR changes it to 2VAR and vice-versa.

3. Enter each value and press [ENTER]. Put all the values for the same data set in the same column.

**Entering frequencies:** If a value occurs more than once, you can use another column to record its frequency, rather than entering multiple copies of that value. For instance, C1 could be height values, while C2 could be the number of children of each height. Each cell in C1 would be paired with the adjacent cell in C2 for its frequency.

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>n</th>
<th>C1</th>
<th>C2</th>
<th>C3</th>
<th>C4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>58</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

4. After entering the data values in the Numeric view, press [SYMB] to switch to the Symbolic view.
5. Define the data in a set named H1 through H5.
   - On the left side, specify which column of data to analyze (C1 through C9, C0). (This specification can be an expression, such as C1 + C2.)
   - On the right side, specify which column (if any) represents the frequencies for the values in the left-hand data column. If there is no frequency data column, then the frequency for each data value is 1.

6. You can define up to five data sets (H1 through H5).
7. Checkmark the data sets you want to analyze. Those data sets with checkmarks will be computed and plotted simultaneously. **However, only one histogram can be plotted at a time.**

To compute IVAR statistics

1. Press [NUM] [STATS] to display the results of the computed statistics for the current (checkmarked) data set. These values are defined in the table, "One-Variable Computed Statistics," on page 5-16.


Example: Weighted IVAR Statistics

A manufacturing company purchases a certain part four times a year. Enter the purchasing data shown below as one-variable sample data *(price per part)* with frequencies *(number of parts)*. Find the weighted mean, that is, the mean price weighted for the quantity purchased.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Price per part, $ (sample)</th>
<th>4.25</th>
<th>4.60</th>
<th>4.70</th>
<th>4.10</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of parts (frequency)</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>800</td>
<td>900</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Select Statistics

[[START]]

M [CLEAR] / M [CLEAR]

< to clear two data columns, if necessary

Make sure that [[1VAR]] is on for one-variable statistics. If it isn’t press [[2VAR]].

4.25 ENTER 4.6 ENTER 4.7 EN

ENTER 4.1 ENTER

> to move to next column

250 ENTER 800 ENTER 900

ENTER 1000 ENTER

SYM

{C} 1 ENTER {C} 2 ENTER

This defines data set H1 with sample data in C1 and frequency data in C2. If H1 is not already checked, press [[CHK]].

NUM [(STATS)]

Displays computed statistics.
You can scroll down to see other values, such as the mean.

The weighted mean price is $4.43 per part.

[(OK)]

M [SETUP-PLT]

Set these X, Y, and H ranges and HWIDTH.
Two-Variable Data
To enter 2VAR

1. Press [LIB] and select Statistics. Press [{START}] or [NUM].

2. Set two-variable [{2VAR]} statistics. This menu key is a toggle: pressing 1VAR changes it to 2VAR and vice-versa.

3. Enter each value and press [ENTER]. Enter the values for one variable in one column, then move to a second column to enter the values for the second variable.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>n</th>
<th>C1</th>
<th>C2</th>
<th>C3</th>
<th>C4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(9, 3125)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Entering ordered pairs: There is an alternative for entering two-variable data. Instead of filling one column and then the other, you enter both variables at once as an ordered pair. Enter the data pair as (x, y) [ENTER]. This automatically puts x in the current column and y in the column to its right.

4. After entering the data values in the Numeric view, press [SYMB] to switch to the Symbolic view.

The bar includes 4.10 and has a frequency of 1000.
5. Define the data in a set named S1 through S5.

- In the left-hand column, specify which column of data (C1 through C9, C0) contains the independent \( (x) \) variable data. (This specification can be an expression, such as \( C1 + C2 \).)

```
\begin{array}{|c|c|}
\hline
\text{S1} & C3 \\
\text{S2} & m \times X + b \\
\text{S3} & \text{Fit} \\
\hline
\end{array}
```

- In the right-hand column, specify which column of data holds the dependent \( (y) \) variable data.

4. Select the regression model you would like to use for each data set. The models are labeled S1FIT through S5FIT, corresponding to S1 through S5. Choose the fit in Symbolic Setup view \([\text{SETUP-SYMB}]\). If you don’t make a selection, the default is a linear fit. (See “Defining a Regression Model,” below.)

```
\begin{array}{|c|c|}
\hline
\text{S1FIT} & \text{Linear} \\
\text{S2FIT} & \text{Linear} \\
\text{S3FIT} & \text{Linear} \\
\hline
\end{array}
```

5. You can define up to five data sets (S1 through S5).

6. Checkmark the data sets you want to analyze. Those data sets with checkmarks will be computed and plotted simultaneously.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>{{EDIT}}</td>
<td>Copies the highlighted item into the edit line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{{INS}}</td>
<td>Inserts a zero value above the highlighted cell.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{{SORT}}</td>
<td>Sorts the specified <em>independent</em> data column in ascending or descending order, and sorts a specified dependent (or frequency) data column along with it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{{BIG}}</td>
<td>Switches between larger and smaller type sizes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{{1VAR}}</td>
<td>A toggle switch to set one-variable or two-variable statistics. This setting affects the statistical calculations and plots. The label and □ indicate which setting is current.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{{2VAR}}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{{STATS}}</td>
<td>Computes descriptive statistics for the statistical data specified in Symbolic view.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[DELETED]</td>
<td>Deletes the currently highlighted value.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[CLEAR]</td>
<td>Clears the current column or all columns of data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cursor key</td>
<td>Moves to the first or last row or column.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Symbolic View Keys

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>{{EDIT}}</td>
<td>Copies the column variable (or variable expression) to the edit line for editing. Press {{OK}} when done.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{{CHK}}</td>
<td>Checks/unchecks the current data set. Only the checkmarked data set(s) are computed and plotted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{{C}} or {{X}}</td>
<td>Typing aid for the column variables (C) or for the Fit expressions (X).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{{SHOW}}</td>
<td>Displays the current variable expression in standard mathematical form. Press {{OK}} when done.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{{EVAL}}</td>
<td>Evaluates the variables in the highlighted column (C1, etc.) expression.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VAR</td>
<td>Menu for entering variable names or contents of variables.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH</td>
<td>Menu for entering math operations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>■ [CHARS]</td>
<td>Displays special characters. To type one, place the cursor on it and press {{OK}}.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEL</td>
<td>Deletes the highlighted variable or the current character in the edit line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>■ [CLEAR]</td>
<td>Resets default specifications for the data sets or clears the edit line (if it was active).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Managing Statistical Data

**Angle Setting** You can ignore the angle measurement mode unless your Fit definition (in Symbolic view) involves a trigonometric function. Then you should specify in the Symbolic Setup view whether the trigonometric units are assumed to be in degrees, radians, or grads.

**Saving Data** Your data are automatically saved. When you are done entering data values, you can press a key for another Statistics view (like **SYMB**), or you can switch to another aplet or Home.
To edit a data set

In the Numeric view of the Statistics aplet, highlight the data value to change. Type a new value and press [ENTER], or press [(EDIT)] to copy the value to the edit line for modification.

To delete data

• To delete a single data item, highlight it and press [DEL].

• To delete a column of data, highlight an entry in that column and press [2nd] [CLEAR]. Select the column name.

• To delete all columns of data, press [2nd] [CLEAR] in Numeric view. Select All columns.

To insert data

Highlight the entry following the point of insertion. Press [(INS)], then enter a number. It will write over the zero that was inserted.

To sort data values

1. In Numeric view, put the highlight in the column you want to sort, then press [(SORT)].

2. Choose "Ascending" or "Descending" order.

3. Specify the INDEPENDENT and DEPENDENT data columns. Sorting is by the independent column. For instance, if Age is C1 and Income is C2 and you want to sort by Income, then you make C2 the independent column for the sorting and C1 the dependent column.

• To sort just one column, choose "None" for the dependent column.

• For one-variable statistics with two data columns, specify the frequency column as the dependent column.

4. Press [(OK)].
Analyzing the Data

First enter your data and define which columns of data make up your data set, then compute their statistical values.

You compute descriptive statistics by pressing the \{STATS\} key in the Numeric view. For two-variable (2VAR) statistics, you must first define the regression model.

Defining a Regression Model (2VAR)

The Symbolic view includes an expression (Fit1 through Fit5) that defines the regression model, or "fit", to use for the regression analysis of each two-variable data set.

There are three ways to select a regression model:

- Accept the default option to fit the data to a straight line.
- Select one of the available Fit options in Symbolic Setup.
- Enter your own mathematical expression in Symbolic view. This expression will be plotted, but it will not be fit to the data points.

To choose the Fit

1. In Numeric view, make sure 2VAR is set (\{2VAR\}).
2. Press [\(\text{SETUP-SYMB}\)] to display the Symbolic Setup view. Highlight the Fit number (S1FT...S5FT) you want to define.
3. Press \{\{CHOOS\}\} and select from the following list. Press \{\{OK\}\} when done. The regression formula for the fit is displayed in Symbolic view.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regression</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Linear</td>
<td>(Default.) Fits the data to a straight line, $y = mx + b$. Uses a least-squares fit. $m*X + b$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logarithmic</td>
<td>Fits to a logarithmic curve, $y = m \ln x + b$. $m*\ln(X) + b$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exponential</td>
<td>Fits to an exponential curve, $y = b \cdot e^{mx}$. $\exp(m*X) * b$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power</td>
<td>Fits to a power curve, $y = bx^n$. $X^m * b$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quadratic</td>
<td>Fits to a quadratic curve, $y = ax^2 + bx + c$. Needs at least three points. $a<em>X^2 + b</em>X + c$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cubic</td>
<td>Fits to a cubic curve, $y = ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d$. Needs at least four points. $a<em>X^3 + b</em>X^2 + c*X + d$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logistic</td>
<td>Fits to a logistic curve, $y = \frac{L}{1 + ae^{(-bX)}}$, where $L$ is the saturation value for growth. You can store a positive real value in L, or—if L=0—let L be computed automatically. $L / (1 + a \exp(-b*X))$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Defined</td>
<td>Define your own expression (in Symbolic view.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To define your own fit

1. In Numeric view, make sure 2VAR is set (\{\{2VAR\}\}).

2. Display the Symbolic view. Highlight the Fit expression (Fit1, etc.) for the desired data set. Type in an expression and press [ENTER]. The independent variable must be X. Example: $1.5 \cdot \cos(X) + 0.3 \cdot \sin(X)$.

This automatically changes the Fit type (S1FIT, etc.) in the Symbolic Setup to "User Defined."

Computing Statistics (1VAR and 2VAR)

After entering your data values (Numeric view) and defining the data set(s) (Symbolic view), you can compute statistics for the checkmarked data set(s).

To compute statistics

1. Press [NUM] to open the Numeric view. Verify that the appropriate (\{1VAR\}) or (\{2VAR\}) menu label is on.

2. Press [Symb] to open the Symbolic view. Verify that the data set (H or S variable) is defined and that the data set(s) you want to analyze are checkmarked. Press (\{/CHK\}) to check or uncheck data sets.

3. Press (\{STATS\}). You will see a list of computed statistics corresponding to the data set(s) and statistics type (1VAR or 2VAR) you specified. Each column of values is computed from a separate, checkmarked data set (H or S variable).

![Statistics Tables]

4. When done, press (\{OK\}) to return to the Numeric view.

The computed statistics are defined in the following tables. Their values are also stored in variables of the same names. You can access a variable by entering its name in Home, or by recalling it from the [Vox] menu (press (\{APLET\}), highlight Stat-One or Stat-Two, then select the name of the variable). If using the VAR menu in Home, the Statistics aplet must be the current (last used) aplet.
**One-Variable Computed Statistics**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NΣ</td>
<td>Number of data points.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOTΣ</td>
<td>Sum of data values (with their frequencies).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEANΣ</td>
<td>Mean value of data set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PVARΣ</td>
<td>Population variance of data set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SVARΣ</td>
<td>Sample variance of data set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSDEV</td>
<td>Population standard deviation of data set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSDEV</td>
<td>Sample standard deviation of data set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MINΣ</td>
<td>Minimum data value in data set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q1</td>
<td>First quartile: median of ordinals to left of median.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEDIAN</td>
<td>Median value of data set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q3</td>
<td>Third quartile: median of ordinals to right of median.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAXΣ</td>
<td>Maximum data value in data set.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Two-Variable Computed Statistics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MEANX</td>
<td>Mean of x- (independent) values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ΣX</td>
<td>Sum of x-values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ΣX2</td>
<td>Sum of x²-values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEANY</td>
<td>Mean of y- (dependent) values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ΣY</td>
<td>Sum of y-values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ΣY2</td>
<td>Sum of y²-values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ΣXY</td>
<td>Sum of each x*y.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CORR</td>
<td>Correlation coefficient of the independent and dependent data columns for a linear fit only (regardless of the Fit chosen). Returns a value from 0 to 1, where 1 is the best fit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COV</td>
<td>Sample covariance of independent and dependent data columns.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Plotting

You can plot:

- Histograms (1VAR).
- Box-and-whisker plots (1VAR).
- Scatter plots of data (2VAR). Pressing [{FIT}] draws a curve to fit the data points according to the current Fit model and calculates regression coefficients.

Once you have entered your data (Numeric view), defined your data set (Symbolic view), and defined your Fit model for two-variable statistics (Symbolic Setup), you can plot your data. You can select up to five Scatter or Box-and-Whisker plots at a time. You can plot only one Histogram at a time.

**To plot statistical data**

1. In Symbolic view ([SYMB]), select (checkmark) the data sets you want to plot.

2. For one-variable data ([{1VAR}]), select the plot type in Plot Setup ([SETUP- PLOT]). Highlight STATPLOT, press [{CHOOSE}], select either Histogram or BoxWhisker, and press [{OK}].

3. For any plot, but especially for a histogram, adjust the plotting scale and range in the Plot Setup view. If you find histogram bars too fat or too thin, you can adjust them with the HWIDTH setting.

4. Press [PLOT]. If you have not adjusted the Plot Setup yourself, you can try [VIEWS] select Auto Scale [{OK}].

**Hint**

Using Autoscaling is often the best way to plot, as it automatically adjusts the plotting scale to the relevant range.
Plot Types

Histogram

One-variable statistics. The numbers below the plot mean that the current bar (where the cursor is) starts at 47.3598 and ends at 48.1024 (not including 48.1024), and the frequency for this column is 1.

Box and Whisker Plot

One-variable statistics. The left whisker marks the minimum data value (MIN) to the first quartile. The box marks the first quartile, the median, and the third quartile. The right whisker marks the third quartile to the maximum data value.

Scatter Plot

Two-variable statistics. The numbers below the plot indicate that the cursor is at the first data point for S1, at (0, 4.63). Plot Setup controls the plotting symbols.
Fitting a Curve to 2VAR Data

In the Plot view, press \{\text{FIT}\} to turn on \{\text{FIT}\}. This calculates a curve to fit the checked two-variable data set(s).

\text{\textbf{PLOT} \{\text{MENU}\} \{\text{FIT}\}}

(assuming 2VAR is set and two data sets are defined and checked in Numeric and Symbolic views)

\text{\textbf{SYM}}

The expression in \textit{Fit1} shows that the slope=0.03865 and the \textit{y}-intercept=4.856.

Regression Coefficients

As shown above, the \{\text{FIT}\} mode (in Plot view) calculates and draws a curve to fit the data points using the given regression model. It also substitutes calculated values for the regression coefficient variables in the Fit expression.

\textbf{CORR}

CORR, the correlation coefficient, is a measure of fit to a linear curve only. Regardless of the Fit model you have chosen, CORR relates to the linear model.

\textbf{Relative Error}

The relative error is stored in a variable named \textit{RelErr}. The relative error provides a measure of fit accuracy for all fits, and it does depend on the Fit model you have chosen.

The relative error is a measure of the error between predicted values and actual values based on the specified Fit. A smaller number means a smaller error, which means a better fit.
Plot Settings

The Plot Setup view ([ SETUP- PLOT]) sets most of the same plotting parameters as it does for the other built-in aplets. See "Setting Up the Plot" in chapter 3. Settings unique to the Statistics aplet are:

Plot Type (1VAR)

STATPLOT specifies either a histogram or a box-and-whisker plot for one-variable statistics (when {{1VAR}} is set). Use {{CHOOS}} to change the highlighted setting.

Histogram Width

HWIDTH specifies the width of a histogram bar (a 1VAR plot). This determines how many bars will fit in the display, as well as how the data are distributed (how many values each bar represents).

Histogram Range

HRNG specifies the range of values for a set of histogram bars (a 1VAR plot). The range runs from the left edge of the leftmost bar to the right edge of the rightmost bar.

Plotting Mark (2VAR)

S1MARK through S5MARK specify one of five symbols to use to plot each data set. Use {{CHOOS}} to change the highlighted setting.

Trouble-shooting

If you have problems plotting, check that you have the following:

- Data values entered in columns of C variables (Numeric view).
- The correct {{1VAR}} or {{2VAR}} menu label on (Numeric view).
- The correct Fit (regression model), if the data are two-variable ({{2VAR}}). You can change the Fit (as S1FIT through SSFIT) in Symbolic Setup.
- A data set defined as specific data columns (Symbolic view).
- Only the data sets to compute or plot are checkmarked (Symbolic view).
- The correct plotting range. Try using [ VIEWS] Auto Scale (instead of [ PLOT]), or adjust the plotting parameters (in Plot Setup) for the ranges of the axes and the width of histogram bars (HWIDTH).
Exploring the Plot

The Plot view has menu keys for zooming, tracing, and coordinate display. There are scaling options under [VIEWS]. These features are described in chapter 3 under "Plotting and Analyzing Equations".

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[CLEAR]</td>
<td>Erases the plot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[VIEWS]</td>
<td>Offers additional pre-defined views for splitting the screen, overlaying plots, and autoscaling the axes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[Left]</td>
<td>Moves cursor to far left or far right.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[Right]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[ZOOM]</td>
<td>Displays ZOOM menu: Center, Box, In, Out, X or Y In/Out, Square, and Set Factors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[TRACE]</td>
<td>Turns Trace mode on/off. The □ appears when Trace mode is on ({{TRACE}}).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(X, Y)</td>
<td>Displays the cursor's coordinate position. Press {{MENU}} to restore the menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[FIT]</td>
<td>Turns Fit mode on/off. Turning [FIT] on draws a line to fit the data points according to the given regression model, and calculates regression values, which are substituted for the Fit expressions (FIT1 through F5) in Symbolic view.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[DEFN]</td>
<td>Temporarily displays the current (defining) expression.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[MENU]</td>
<td>Turns menu-key labels on and off. When the labels are off, any menu key turns them back on.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Calculating Predicted Values

The functions PREDX and PREDY will estimate (predict) values for X or Y given a hypothetical value for the other. The estimation is made based on the curve that has been calculated to fit the data according to the specified fit.

To find predicted values

1. In Plot view, calculate the Fit (regression curve) for the data set:
   - In Symbolic view, your data set (S variable) must be defined and checkmarked. In Symbolic Setup, the fit type must be set.
   - In Plot view, press {{FIT}} to turn on {{FIT>Create}} and calculate the regression curve. (If {{FIT>Create}} is already on, press it twice to make it the current regression equation.)

2. In Home, enter PREDX (y-value) [ENTER] to find the predicted (estimated) value for the independent variable given a hypothetical dependent value.
   - Enter PREDY (x-value) to find the predicted value of the dependent variable given a hypothetical independent variable.
   - You can type PREDX and PREDY using the Alpha shift, or you can copy these function names from the MATH menu under the Stat-Two category.
Using Matrices

You can do matrix calculations in Home (and in programs). The matrix and each row of a matrix appear in brackets, and the elements and rows are separated by commas, such as \[ \begin{bmatrix} [1, 2, 3], [4, 5, 6] \end{bmatrix} \] for

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
1 & 2 & 3 \\
4 & 5 & 6
\end{bmatrix}
\]

(If the Decimal Mark in MÔDES is set to Comma, then the separators are periods.)

Vectors
Vectors are one-dimensional arrays. They are composed of just one row or one column. In this calculator, a vector is represented with single brackets; for example, \([1, 2, 3]\).

Matrices
Matrices are two-dimensional arrays. They are composed of more than one row and more than one column. A true, two-dimensional matrix always is represented with nested brackets; for example, \([ [1, 2, 3], [4, 5, 6] ]\).

Matrix Variables
There are ten matrix variables available, named M1 through M9 and M0. You can use them in calculations or manipulations in Home or in a program. You can fetch the matrix names from the VAR menu, or just type their names from the keyboard.

Creating and Storing Matrices
You can create, edit, delete, send, and receive named matrices in the Matrix catalog (\(\text{[\text{MATRX}]}\)).

You can also create and store matrices—named or unnamed—in Home.
Creating a Matrix in
Matrix Catalog

1. Press [MATH] [MATRIX].

2. Highlight the matrix variable name you want to use and press ([NEW]). (The dimensions will change automatically after the matrix is defined.)

3. Select the type of matrix.

   - **For a vector (one-dimensional array),** select Real Vector or Complex Vector. Certain operations do not recognize a one-dimensional matrix as a vector, so this selection is important.

   - **For a matrix (two-dimensional array),** select Real Matrix or Complex Matrix.

4. For each element in the matrix, type a number or an expression, and press ENTER. (The expression may not contain symbolic variable names.)

   - **For complex numbers,** enter each number in complex form; that is, \((a, b)\), where \(a\) is the real part and \(b\) is the imaginary part. You must include the parentheses and the comma.

5. Use the cursor keys to move to a different row or column. You can change the direction that the highlight automatically advances by pressing ([GO]) to display ([GO→]) or ([GO ↓]). For no automatic movement, display ([GO]).

6. When done, press [MATH] [MATRIX] to see the Matrix catalog, or press [HOME] to return to the Home screen for calculations, or start any other activity (such as an aplet) you want. The matrix entries are automatically stored.

The Matrix Catalog automatically lists the correct matrix dimensions. A matrix is listed with two dimensions, even if it is 3×1. A vector is listed with one dimension, such as 3.

---

6-2 Using Matrices
To edit a matrix

In the Matrix catalog, highlight the matrix name you want and press \{EDIT\} instead of \{NEW\}.

### Matrix Catalog Keys

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>{EDIT}</td>
<td>Opens the highlighted matrix for editing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{NEW}</td>
<td>Prompts for a matrix type, then opens an empty matrix with the highlighted name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{SEND}</td>
<td>Transmits the highlighted matrix to another HP 38G or a disk drive. Works like sending an aplet (chapter 1).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{RECV}</td>
<td>Receives a transmitted matrix from another HP 38G or a disk drive. Works like receiving an aplet (chapter 1).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[DEL]</td>
<td>Clears the highlighted matrix.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[CLEAR]</td>
<td>Clears all matrices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[\downarrow] or [\uparrow]</td>
<td>Moves to the end or the beginning of the catalog.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Matrix Editing Keys

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>{EDIT}</td>
<td>Copies the highlighted element into the edit line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{INS}</td>
<td>Inserts a row of zeros above, or a column of zeros to the left, of the highlighted cell. (You choose row or column.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{GO}</td>
<td>A three-way toggle for cursor advancement in the Matrix editor. {GO→} advances to the right, {GO ↓} advances downward, and {GO} does not advance at all.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{BIG}</td>
<td>Switches between larger and smaller type sizes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[DEL]</td>
<td>Deletes the row or column (you choose) currently highlighted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[CLEAR]</td>
<td>Clears all elements from the matrix.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[cursor key]</td>
<td>Moves to the first or last row or column.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To display a matrix

- In the Matrix catalog ( [MATRIX]), highlight the matrix name and press {EDIT}.
- In Home, enter the name of the matrix variable and press [ENTER].

To display one element

In Home, enter matrixname(row,column). For example, if M2 is [[3,4],[5,6]], then M2(1,2) [ENTER] returns 4.

To delete a matrix

In the Matrix catalog ([MATRIX]), highlight the matrix to delete and press [DEL]. The name remains. The matrix is redimensioned to 1×1 with a zero element.

To delete all matrices

In the Matrix catalog ([MATRIX]), press [CLEAR].

To delete a row or column

Pressing [DEL] clears one row or column in a matrix. (You are prompted to choose.)

To transmit a matrix

You can send and receive matrices to/from other calculators just as you can send and receive aplets, programs, lists, and notes.

After aligning the calculators' infrared ports, open the Matrix catalogs on both calculators. Highlight the matrix to send, then press [{SEND}] on the sending calculator and [{RECV}] on the receiving calculator. See "Sending and Receiving Aplets," in chapter 1.

---

6-4 Using Matrices
Creating a Matrix in Home

1. Enter the matrix in the edit line. Start and end the matrix and each row with brackets (the shifted 5 and 6 keys).

2. Separate each element and each row with a comma. Example: \([ [1, 2], [3, 4] ]\). (Note: if the Decimal Mark in MODES is set to Comma, use periods as separators.)

3. An array of just one dimension (a vector) needs only one set of brackets. Example: \([1, 2, 3]\).

4. Press \([\text{ENTER}]\) to enter and display the matrix.

Immediately after typing in the matrix, you can store it in a variable by typing \([\text{STO}}\)] matrixname \([\text{ENTER}]\). The matrix variable names are M1 through M9, and M0.

The left screen below shows the matrix \([ [2.5, 729], [16, 2] ]\) being stored into M5. The screen on the right shows the vector \([66, 33, 11]\) being stored into M6. Note that you can enter an expression (like 5/2) for an element of the matrix, and it will be evaluated.

To store one element

In Home, enter value \([\text{STO}}\)] matrixname(row,column). For example, to change the element in the first row and second column of M5 to 728, type 728 \([\text{STO}}\)] M5(1, 2) \([\text{ENTER}]\).
Matrix Arithmetic

You can use the arithmetic functions (+, −, ×, /) with matrix arguments. Multiplication and division have different meanings depending on whether one of the arguments is a scalar or not.

Adding and Subtracting

For addition and subtraction, the dimensions of the matrices must be the same. You can enter the matrices themselves or enter the names of stored matrix variables. The matrices can be real or complex.

For the next four examples, store [[1,2],[3,4]] into M1 and [[5,6],[7,8]] into M2.

```
[ MATRIX] {NEW} {OK}
1 ENTER 2 ENTER ▼ 3
ENTER 4 ENTER
[ MATRIX] ▼ {NEW}
{OK} 5 ENTER 6 ▼
ENTER 7 ENTER 8 ENTER
HOME [A..Z] M 1 +
A..Z M 2 ENTER
```

Multiplying and Dividing by a Scalar

For division by a scalar, enter the matrix first, then the operator, then the scalar. For multiplication, the order of the operands does not matter. The matrix and the scalar can be real or complex.

```
/ 2 ENTER
(This divides the previous matrix sum by 2.)
```

66 Using Matrices
Multiplying Two Matrices

Multiplication of two matrices is not commutative. The number of columns of the first matrix must equal the number of rows of the second matrix.

Assume that M1 still contains \([[1,2],[3,4]]\) and M2 still contains \([[5,6],[7,8]]\).

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
A & Z \\
\end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
M1 \\
\end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
\times \\
\end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
A & Z \\
\end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
M2 \\
\end{bmatrix}
\]

\[
\text{Ans/2}
\]
\[
\begin{bmatrix}
3, 4, 5, 6 \\
\end{bmatrix}
\]
\[
\begin{bmatrix}
19, 22, 43, 50 \\
\end{bmatrix}
\]

The result has the same number of rows as the first matrix and the same number of columns as the second matrix.

To multiply a matrix by a vector, enter the matrix first, then the vector. The number of elements in the vector must equal the number of columns in the matrix.

Dividing by a Square Matrix

For division of a matrix or a vector by a square matrix, the number of rows of the dividend (or the number of elements, if it is a vector) must equal the number of rows in the divisor.

Assume that M1 still contains \([[1,2],[3,4]]\) and M2 still contains \([[5,6],[7,8]]\).

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
A & Z \\
\end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
M1 \\
\end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
/ \\
\end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
A & Z \\
\end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
M2 \\
\end{bmatrix}
\]

\[
\text{Ans/2}
\]
\[
\begin{bmatrix}
19, 22, 43, 50 \\
\end{bmatrix}
\]
\[
\begin{bmatrix}
5, 4, -4, -3 \\
\end{bmatrix}
\]

The result is \(M2^{-1} \times M1\).

Inverting a Matrix

You can invert a square matrix in Home by typing the matrix (or its variable name) and pressing \(\boxed{x^{-1}}\) \(\text{ENTER}\). (Or you can enter \text{INVERSE}(\text{matrixname})\) in Home.)

Negating Each Element

You can change the sign of each element in a matrix by pressing \(-x\) before the matrix name.
Solving Systems of Linear Equations

Remember that a system of equations can be represented by a matrix equation:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Equation Form</th>
<th>Matrix Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| \( ax + by + cz = k_1 \) | \[
\begin{bmatrix}
  a & b & c \\
  d & e & f \\
  g & h & i
\end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
  x \\
  y \\
  z
\end{bmatrix}
= \begin{bmatrix}
  k_1 \\
  k_2 \\
  k_3
\end{bmatrix}
\] |

Using the matrix form, the solution is the vector of variables, as shown below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Constants Vector</th>
<th>Coefficients Matrix</th>
<th>Variables Vector (result)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>([k_1, k_2, k_3])</td>
<td>([a, b, c][d, e, f][g, h, i])</td>
<td>([x, y, z])</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The coefficient matrix must be square (the number of coefficients per equation equals the number of equations).

To solve linear equations

1. In Home, enter the constants vector or the name of a stored constants vector (M1...M9, M0). *(This must be a vector, which has a single set of brackets, not a matrix, which has multiple sets of brackets.)*

2. Press \([\text{7}]\).

3. Enter the coefficients matrix or the name of a stored square coefficients matrix (M1...M9, M0).

4. Press \([\text{ENTER}]\). The resulting variables vector is displayed.

Example

Find all \([x, y, z]\) satisfying
\[
\begin{align*}
2x + 3y + 4z &= 6 \\
x + y - z &= 0 \\
4x - y + 2z &= 6
\end{align*}
\]

The constants vector is \([6,0,6]\). The coefficients matrix is \([\begin{bmatrix}2,3,4\end{bmatrix},\begin{bmatrix}1,1,-1\end{bmatrix},\begin{bmatrix}4,-1,2\end{bmatrix}]. The solution for this system of linear equations (that is, constants vector divided by coefficients matrix) is \([1,0,1]\).
To see the full input expression, first copy it to the edit line (press [A] [A] ([COPY])), then press [D] to scroll through the expression.

Matrix Functions

There are two categories of matrix operations: functions and commands. The matrix functions are given in the following table. The matrix commands are for programming; they appear in chapter 8, Programming.

Functions
- Functions can be used in any aplet or in Home. They are listed in the MATH menu under the Matrix category. They can be used in mathematical expressions—primarily in Home, as well as in programs.
- Functions always produce and display a result. They do not change any stored variables, such as a matrix variable.
- Functions have arguments that are enclosed in parentheses and separated by commas. Example: CROSS (vector1, vector2). The matrix input can be either a matrix variable name (such as M1) or the actual matrix data inside brackets. For example, CROSS (M1, [1, 2]).
- If Decimal Mark in MODES is set to Comma, use periods to separate arguments. For example, CROSS (vector1, vector2).

Commands
Commands are limited to programs. Matrix commands are listed in the MATH menu ([MATH] ([CMD]), category Matrix.

Argument Conventions
- For row# or column#, supply the number of the row (counting from the top, starting with 1) or the number of the column (counting from the left, starting with 1).
- The arguments matrix and matrixname can refer to either a vector or a matrix.
Output

Functions return results to the display (and to the variable \textit{Ans}).

Results can be displayed with single brackets (for a vector) or double brackets (for a matrix).

\begin{table}[h]
\centering
\begin{tabular}{|l|p{5in}|}
\hline
\textbf{Matrix Functions} & \\
\hline
\textbf{COLNORM} & Column Norm. Finds the maximum value (over all columns) of the sums of the absolute values of all elements in a column. \\
& \textit{COLNORM}(\textit{matrix}) \\
\hline
\textbf{COND} & Condition Number. Finds the 1-norm (column norm) of a square \textit{matrix}. \\
& \textit{COND}(\textit{matrix}) \\
\hline
\textbf{CROSS} & Cross Product of \textit{vector1} \times \textit{vector2}. \\
& \textit{CROSS}(\textit{vector1}, \textit{vector2}) \\
\hline
\textbf{DET} & Determinant of a square \textit{matrix}. \\
& \textit{DET}(\textit{matrix}) \\
\hline
\textbf{DOT} & Dot Product of two arrays, \textit{matrix1} \cdot \textit{matrix2}. \\
& \textit{DOT}(\textit{matrix1}, \textit{matrix2}) \\
\hline
\textbf{EIGENVAL} & Displays the eigenvalues in vector form for \textit{matrix}. \\
& \textit{EIGENVAL}(\textit{matrix}) \\
\hline
\textbf{EIGENVV} & Eigenvectors and Eigenvalues for a square \textit{matrix}. Displays a list of two arrays. The first contains the eigenvectors and the second contains the eigenvalues. \\
& \textit{EIGENVV}(\textit{matrix}) \\
\hline
\textbf{IDENMAT} & Identity matrix. Creates a square matrix of dimension \textit{size} \times \textit{size} whose diagonal elements equal 1 and off-diagonal elements equal zero. \\
& \textit{IDENMAT}(\textit{size}) \\
\hline
\textbf{INVERSE} & Inverts a square matrix (real or complex). \\
& \textit{INVERSE}(\textit{matrixname}) \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{table}
### Matrix Functions, continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LQ</td>
<td>LQ Factorization. Factors $m \times n$ matrix into three matrices: [ \begin{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} m \times n \text{ lowertrapezoidal} \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} n \times n \text{ orthogonal} \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} m \times m \text{ permutation} \end{bmatrix} \end{bmatrix}. ] ( \text{LQ}(\text{matrix}) )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LSQ</td>
<td>Least Squares. Displays the minimum norm least squares matrix (or vector). ( \text{LSQ}(\text{matrix1, matrix2}) )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LU</td>
<td>LU Decomposition. Factors a square matrix into three matrices: [ \begin{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \text{lowertriangular} \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} \text{uppertriangular} \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} \text{permutation} \end{bmatrix} \end{bmatrix} ] The uppertriangular has ones on its diagonal. ( \text{LU}(\text{matrix}) )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAKEMAT</td>
<td>Make Matrix. Creates a matrix of dimension $rows \times columns$, using expression to calculate each element. If expression contains the variables I and J, then the calculation for each element substitutes the current row number for I and the current column number for J. ( \text{MAKEMAT}(\text{expression, rows, columns}) )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: ( \text{MAKEMAT}(0, 3, 3) ) returns a $3 \times 3$ zero matrix, [ \begin{bmatrix} 0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0 \end{bmatrix}. ]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QR</td>
<td>QR Factorization. Factors an $m \times n$ matrix into three matrices: [ \begin{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} m \times m \text{ orthogonal} \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} m \times n \text{ uppertrapezoidal} \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} n \times n \text{ permutation} \end{bmatrix} \end{bmatrix}. ] ( \text{QR}(\text{matrix}) )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RANK</td>
<td>Rank (an integer) of a rectangular matrix. ( \text{RANK}(\text{matrix}) )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROWNORM</td>
<td>Row Norm. Finds the maximum value (over all rows) of the sums of the absolute values of all elements in a row. ( \text{ROWNORM}(\text{matrix}) )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RREF</td>
<td>Reduced Row-Echelon. Changes a rectangular matrix to its reduced row-echelon form. ( \text{RREF}(\text{matrix}) )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symbol</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **SCHUR** | Schur Decomposition. Factors a square matrix into two matrices.  
If matrix is real, then the result is \{ [ [orthogonal] ] , [ [upper-quasi triangular] ] \}.  
If matrix is complex, then the result is \{ [ [unitary] ] , [ [upper-triangular] ] \}.  
SCHUR(matrix) |
| **SIZE** | Dimensions of matrix. Returned as a list: [rows,columns].  
SIZE(matrix) |
| **SPECNORM** | Spectral Norm of the specified array.  
SPECNORM(matrix) |
| **SPECRAD** | Spectral Radius of a square matrix.  
SPECRAD(matrix) |
| **SVD** | Singular Value Decomposition. Factors an \( m \times n \) matrix into two matrices and a vector:  
\{ [ [m\times m square orthogonal] ] , [ [n\times n square orthogonal] ] , [real] \}.  
SVD(matrix) |
| **SVL** | Singular Values. Returns a vector containing the singular values of matrix.  
SVL(matrix) |
| **TRACE** | Finds the trace of a square matrix. The trace is equal to the sum of the diagonal elements. (It is also equal to the sum of the eigenvalues.)  
TRACE(matrix) |
| **TRN** | Transposes matrix. For a complex matrix, TRN finds the conjugate transpose.  
TRN(matrix) |
**Examples**

**Filling Matrices**
You can create and fill a matrix with zeros for the diagonal elements and ones for the off-diagonal elements using the MAKEMAT (make matrix) function. For example, entering `MAKEMAT(I ≠ J, 4, 4)` creates a 4×4 matrix with ones for all elements except zeros on the diagonal. The logical operator ≠ returns 0 when I (the row number) and J (the column number) are equal, and returns 1 when they are not equal.

**Identity Matrix**
You can create an identity matrix with the IDENMAT function. For example, `IDENMAT(2)` creates the 2×2 identity matrix `[[1,0],[0,1]]`.

**Redimension a Matrix**
Suppose the variable M0 is a 2×2 matrix containing `[[3,4],[5,6]]`. The programming command `REDIM M0; (2, 1)` would redimension it to a matrix of 2 rows×1 column, `[[3],[4]]`. The command `REDIM M0; (4)` would redimension it to the column vector `[3,4,5,6]`. To see the redimensioned matrix, either recall the matrix to the edit line (`[A..Z]M 0 ENTER`), or use the Matrix editor (EDIT [MATRIX]).

**Transposing a Matrix**
The TRN function swaps the row-column and column-row elements of a matrix. For instance, element 1,2 (row 1, column 2) is swapped with element 2,1, element 2,3 is swapped with element 3,2, and so on.

For example, `TRN([[1,2],[3,4]])` creates the matrix `[[1,3],[2,4]]`. 
Using Lists

You can do list operations in Home (and in programs). The elements of a list appear in braces and are separated by commas, such as {A, B, C} or {1, 2, 3}. (If the Decimal Mark in MODES is set to Comma, then the separators are periods.)

List Variables

There are ten list variables available, named L1 through L9 and L0. You can use them in calculations or expressions in Home or in a program. You can fetch the list names from the VAR menu, or just type their names from the keyboard.

Creating and Storing Lists

You can create, edit, delete, send, and receive named lists in the List catalog ([LIST]). You can also create and store lists—named or unnamed—in Home.

Creating a List in List Catalog

1. Press [LIST].
2. Highlight the list name you want to use (L1, etc.) and press ([EDIT]).
3. For each item, enter the value and press [ENTER]. This value can be a real or complex number (or an expression).
4. When done, press [LIST] to see the List catalog, or press [HOME] to return to the Home screen for calculations. Or start any other activity (such as an aplet) you want.
List Catalog Keys

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>{{EDIT}}</td>
<td>Opens the highlighted list for editing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{{SEND}}</td>
<td>Transmits the highlighted list to another HP 38G or a disk drive. Works like sending an aplet (chapter 1).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{{RECV}}</td>
<td>Receives a transmitted list from another HP 38G or a disk drive. Works like receiving an aplet (chapter 1).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEL</td>
<td>Clears the highlighted list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ [CLEAR]</td>
<td>Clears all lists.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ ▼ or ▲</td>
<td>Moves to the end or the beginning of the catalog.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

List Editing Keys

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>{{EDIT}}</td>
<td>Copies the highlighted list item into the edit line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{{INS}}</td>
<td>Inserts the value you type as the item before the highlighted item.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEL</td>
<td>Deletes the highlighted item from the list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ [CLEAR]</td>
<td>Clears all elements from the list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>☐ ▼ or ▲</td>
<td>Moves to the end or the beginning of the list.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To display a list
- In the List catalog, highlight the list name and press {{EDIT}}.
- In Home, enter the name of the list and press ENTER.

To display one element
In Home, enter listname(element#). For example, if L2 is {3,4,5,6}, then L2(2) ENTER returns 4.

To delete a list
In the List catalog (☐ [LIST]), highlight the list name and press DEL. The name remains.

To delete all lists
In the List catalog (☐ [LIST]), press ☐ [CLEAR].

7-2 Using Lists
To transmit a list
You can send and receive lists to/from other calculators just as you can send and receive aplet programs, matrices, and notes.

After aligning the calculators' infrared ports, open the List catalogs on both calculators. Highlight the list to send, then press [{SEND}] on the sending calculator and [{RECV}] on the receiving calculator. See "Sending and Receiving Aplets," in chapter 1.

Creating a List in Home

1. Enter the list in the edit line. Start and end the list with braces (the shifted [8] and [9] keys) and separate each element with a comma.

2. Press [ENTER] to evaluate and display a list.

Immediately after typing in the list, you can store it in a variable by typing [{STO}] listname [ENTER]. The list variable names are L1 through L9 and L0.

This example stores the list {25,147,8} in L1. (You can omit the final brace when entering a list.)

```
5^2,3*49,8\STO\L1
(25,147,8)
```

To store one element
In Home, enter value [{STO}] listname(element). For example, to change the second element of L1 to 148, type

```
148 \STO\L1(2) \ENTER.
```
List Functions

Following is a table of list functions. Use them in Home, as well as in programs.

You can type in the name of the function, or you can copy the name of the function from the List category of the MATH menu. Press [MATH] [A-Z] L. This displays the List category. Highlight the function on the right-hand side and press {OK}.

Function Syntax

- Functions have arguments that are enclosed in parentheses and separated by commas. Example: CONCAT(L1, L2). An argument can be either a list variable name (such as L1) or the actual list data inside braces. For example, REVERSE({1, 2, 3}).

- If Decimal Mark in MODES is set to Comma, use periods to separate arguments. For example, CONCAT(L1.L2).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>List Functions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>any real-number operator</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operators like +, -, *, /, and ( \sqrt{\ } ) can take lists as arguments. If there are two arguments and both are lists, then the lists must have the same length, since the calculation pairs up the elements. If there are two arguments and one is a real number, then the calculation pairs the number with each element of the list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( list1 + list2 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( value + list )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( list + value )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CONCAT</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concatenates two lists into a new list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONCAT(list1, list2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: ( \sqrt{\ } {4, 9, 16} ) returns ( {2, 3, 4} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: CONCAT({1, 2, 3}, {4}) returns {1, 2, 3, 4}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**List Operations, continued**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( \Delta \text{LIST} )</td>
<td>Creates a new list composed of the differences between the sequential elements in ( \text{list1} ). The new list has one fewer elements than ( \text{list1} ). The first differences for ( {x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n} ) are ( {x_2 - x_1, \ldots, x_n - x_{n-1}} ).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \Delta \text{LIST}( \text{list1} ) )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{MAKELIST} )</td>
<td>Calculates a sequence of elements for a new list. Evaluates expression with variable from begin to end values, taken at increment steps.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{MAKELIST}( \text{expression, variable, begin, end, increment} ) )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \pi \text{LIST} )</td>
<td>Calculates the product of all elements in list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \pi \text{LIST}( \text{list} ) )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: ( \pi \text{LIST}( {2, 3, 4} ) ) returns 24.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{POS} )</td>
<td>The position (a number) of an element within a list. The element can be a value, a variable, or an expression.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{POS}( \text{list, element} ) )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{REVERSE} )</td>
<td>Reverses order of elements in list into a new list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{REVERSE}( \text{list} ) )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{SIZE} )</td>
<td>Number of elements in a list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{SIZE}( \text{list} ) )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \Sigma \text{LIST} )</td>
<td>Calculates the sum of all elements in list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \Sigma \text{LIST}( \text{list} ) )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example: ( \Sigma \text{LIST}( {2, 3, 4} ) ) returns 9.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{SORT} )</td>
<td>Sorts elements in ascending order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{SORT}( \text{list} ) )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Using Lists in Expressions

You can use a list name or the explicit list in an expression using any of the real-number functions.

Press \texttt{\textsc{enter}} to evaluate the expression.

\begin{verbatim}
HOME
\{
[1, 2, 3]
\}
(\{STO\}) \{A..Z\} L2 ENTER
5 \times \{A..Z\} L2 ENTER
\end{verbatim}

Generating a Series

The \texttt{MAKELIST} operation generates a series by automatically producing a list from the repeated evaluation of an expression.

Example

In Home, generate a list of squares from 23 to 27 using the expression $A^2$.

Copy MAKE\texttt{LIST} from the MATH menu. The syntax is \texttt{MAKELIST(expression, variable, begin, end, increment)}.

\begin{verbatim}
MATH L [Select MAKE\texttt{LIST} \{OK\}]
\{A..Z\} \{[x^2]\} \{A..Z\} \{\}
23 27 \{1\} \{\}
ENTER
\end{verbatim}

Finding First Differences

Finding the first differences is a way of finding the rate of change in a series of values. In Home or in a program, the \texttt{\Delta LIST} operation finds the first differences.

Example

In the List catalog or in Home, store \{3,5,8,12,17,23\} in L5. In Home, find the first differences for this list.

\begin{verbatim}
HOME \{
[3,5,8,12,17,23]
\}
\{
[STO\} \{A..Z\} L5 \}
ENTER
MATH L [Select \texttt{\Delta\textsc{LIST}} \{OK\}]
\{A..Z\} L5 \{\}
\end{verbatim}

7-6 Using Lists
Finding Statistical Values for List Elements

To find values such as the mean, median, maximum, and minimum values of the elements in a list, use the Statistics aplet.

Given list data in a list variable (L1, for example), store L1 into a data column variable (C1, for example), and then compute its statistics.

1. In Home, store L1 into C1. You will be able to see the list data in the Numeric view of the Statistics aplet.

2. In the Numeric view of the Statistics aplet, set 1VAR mode (press [{2VAR}] if necessary, to display [{1VAR}]).

3. In the Symbolic view, define H1 (for example) as C1 (sample) and 1 (frequency). Make sure that H1 is checkmarked.

4. In the Numeric view, press [{STATS}].

   NΣ is the number of elements in L1.
   TOTΣ is the sum of all elements in L1.
   MEANΣ is the mean value of all elements in L1.
   MINΣ is the smallest element in L1.
   MEDIAN is the median value of all elements in L1.
   MAXΣ is the largest element in L1.
Programming

This chapter describes how to program using the HP 38G. In this chapter you'll learn about

- Using the Program catalog to create and edit programs.
- Programming commands.
- Storing and retrieving variables in programs.
- Programming variables.

The Contents of a Program

An HP 38G program contains a sequence of numbers, mathematical expressions, and commands that execute automatically to perform a task.

These items are separated by a colon ( : ). Commands that take multiple arguments, have those arguments separated by a semicolon ( ; ). For example,

```
PIXON  xposition ; yposition
```

Structured Programming

Inside a program you can use branching structures to control the execution flow. You can take advantage of structured programming by creating "building-block" programs. Each building-block program stands alone—and it can be called in other programs.

Example

```
RUN GETVALUE: RUN CALCULATE: RUN SHOWANSWER
```

This program is separated into three main tasks, each an individual program. Within each program, the task can be simple—or it can be divided further into other programs that perform smaller tasks.

Using the Program Catalog

The Program catalog is where you create, edit, delete, send, receive, or run programs. This section describes how to
• Open the Program catalog.
• Enter commands with the Math menu.
• Create a new program.
• Edit a program.
• Send and receive a program.
• Delete a program or its contents.
• Run and debug a program.
• Stop a program.
• Copy a program.

To open the Program catalog

• Press \[ \text{[PROGRAM]} \].
The Program catalog displays a list of program names. If you haven’t created any programs, the only name you’ll see is Editline.

Editline contains the last expression that you entered from the edit line in HOME (or the last data you entered in an input form). If you press ENTER from HOME without entering any data, the HP 38G runs to contents of Editline.
Before starting to work with programs, you should take a few minutes to become familiar with the Program catalog keys. You can use any of the following keys (both menu and keyboard), to perform tasks in the Program catalog.

### Program catalog keys

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>{{EDIT}}</td>
<td>Opens the highlighted program for editing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{{NEW}}</td>
<td>Prompts for a new program name, then opens an empty program.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{{SEND}}</td>
<td>Transmits the highlighted program from another HP 38G or from a disk drive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{{RECV}}</td>
<td>Receives the highlighted program to another HP 38G or to a disk drive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{{RUN}}</td>
<td>Runs the highlighted program.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>▼ or ▲</td>
<td>Moves to the end or the beginning of the Program catalog.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEL</td>
<td>Delete the highlighted program.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ [CLEAR]</td>
<td>Deletes all programs in the Program catalog.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### To create a new program

1. Press □ [PROGRAM] to open the Program catalog.
2. Press {{NEW}}.
   The HP 38G prompts you for a file name.

A program name can contain special characters, such as a space. However, if you use special characters and then run the program by typing it in HOME, you must enclose the program name in double quotes (" "). Don't use the " symbol within your program name.
3. Type your program name, then press {{OK}}. When you press {{OK}}, the Program Editor opens.

4. Enter your program. When done, start any other activity. Your work is saved automatically.

**To enter commands**

Until you learn the abbreviated spelling for the HP 38G commands, the easiest way to enter commands is to use the Math menu from the Program editor.

1. From the Program editor, press [MATH] {{CMD}}.
2. On the left, highlight a command category, then press →.

```
PROGRAM COMMANDS

Plot : CHECK
Branch : SELECT
Drawing : SETVIEWS
Graphic : UNCHECK

MTH CMDS CONS CANCEL OK
```

4. On the right, highlight a command, then press {{OK}}.

```
PROGRAM COMMANDS

Plot : CHECK
Branch : SELECT
Drawing : SETVIEWS
Graphic : UNCHECK

MTH CMDS CONS CANCEL OK
```

**To save a program**

There is no need to save your program. As you work, your program is saved automatically under the program name you specified.

84 Programming
To edit a program

1. Press \(\text{[PROGRAM]}\) to open the Program catalog.
2. Use the arrow keys to highlight the program you want to edit.
3. Press \(\{\text{EDIT}\}\).

The HP 38G opens the Program Editor. The name of your program appears in the title bar of the display. You can use the following keys to edit your program.

### Editing keys

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>([\text{STO}\downarrow])</td>
<td>Stores a number into a named variable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>([\text{SPACE}])</td>
<td>Inserts space into text.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>([\text{PAGE}])</td>
<td>Displays previous page of the program.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>([\text{PAGE}\downarrow])</td>
<td>Displays next page of the program.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\text{▲} \ \text{▼})</td>
<td>Moves up or down one line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\text{◄} \ \text{►})</td>
<td>Moves right or left one space.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>([\text{A} \ldots \text{Z}])</td>
<td>Alpha-lock for letter entry. Press ([\text{STO}]+[\text{A} \ldots \text{Z}]) to lock lower case.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>([\text{BKSP}])</td>
<td>Backspaces cursor and deletes character.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>([\text{DEL}])</td>
<td>Deletes current character.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>([\text{ENTER}])</td>
<td>Starts a new line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\text{[CLEAR]})</td>
<td>Erases the entire program.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>([\text{VAR}])</td>
<td>Menus for entering variable names, contents of variables, math functions, program commands, and program constants.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>([\text{MATH}])</td>
<td>Menus for entering variable names, contents of variables, math functions, program commands, and program constants.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\text{[CHARS]})</td>
<td>Displays all non-keyboard characters. To type one, highlight it and press ([\text{OK}]) or ([\text{ECHO}]) to type several characters.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To send and receive a program

You can send and receive programs to and from another HP 38G or disk drive—just as you can send and receive aplets, lists, matrices, and notes.

1. Connect the storage device to the calculator by cable or align the two calculators’ infrared ports by matching up the triangle marks on the rims of the calculators. Place the calculators no more than 2 inches (5 cm) apart.

2. **Sending calculator**: Open the Program catalog, highlight the program to send, and press {{SEND}}.

   - You have two options—another HP 38G or a disk drive (or a computer). Highlight your selection and press {{OK}}.

   - If transmitting to a disk drive (aplet disk drive or computer), you have the options of sending to the current (default) directory or to another directory.

3. **Receiving calculator**: Open the Program catalog and press {{RECV}}.

   - You have two options—another HP 38G or a disk drive (or computer). Highlight your selection and press {{OK}}.

   The annunciator line displays ➞ until transmission is complete.
To delete a program

You can delete any program except Editline.
1. Press "[PROGRAM] to open the Program catalog.
2. Highlight a program to delete, then press [DEL].

To delete all programs

- Press "[CLEAR], then press "[YES]."

To delete the contents of a program

1. Press "[PROGRAM] to open the Program catalog.
2. Highlight a program, then press "[EDIT]."
3. Press "[CLEAR], then press "[YES]."
   The contents of the program are deleted, but the program name remains.

To run a program

From HOME, type RUN program_name.

or

From the Program catalog, highlight the program you want to run and press "[RUN]."

Regardless of where you start the program, all programs run in HOME. What you see will differ slightly depending on where you started the program. If you start the program from HOME, the HP 38G displays the contents of Ans (Home variable containing the last result), when the program has finished. If you start the program from Program catalog, the HP 38G returns you the Program catalog when the program ends.

To debug a program

If you run a program that contains errors, the program will stop and you'll see an error message.

1. Choose "[YES] to edit the program.
2. A flashing arrow appears in the program at the point where the error occurred.

![Image](https://example.com/image.png)

The character preceding the arrow contains a syntax error.

3. You can continue to run, then edit the program until you find and correct all errors.

---

To stop a program

You can stop the execution of a program at any time by pressing [CANCEL] (the ON key).

---

To copy a program

You can use the following procedure if you want to make a copy of your work before editing—or if you want to use one program as a template for another.

1. Press [PROGRAM] to open the Program catalog.
2. Press [NEW].
3. Type a new file name, then choose [OK].
   The Program Editor opens with an empty new program.
4. Press VAR to open the Variable menu.
5. Press P to quickly scroll to Program.
6. Press ▶, then highlight the program you want to copy.
7. Press [VALUE], then press [OK].

---

The HP 38G copies the contents of the highlighted program into the current (open) program.

---

8-8 Programming
Programming Commands

This section describes the commands for programming with the HP 38G. You can enter these commands in your program by typing them or by accessing them from the Math menu.

1. Press ▼ [PROGRAM] to open the Program catalog.

2. Press {{NEW}} or {{EDIT}} to open the Program editor.

   The Program editor is where you enter new programs or edit existing ones.

2. From the Program editor, press [MATH] {{CMDS}}.

   The HP 38G displays the Program Commands menu. The left side of the screen shows the command categories and the right side of the screen shows the available commands.
Aplet Commands

These commands control aplets.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHECK</td>
<td>Checks (selects) the corresponding function in the current aplet. For example, Check 3 would check F3 if the current aplet is Function. Then a checkmark would appear next to F3 in Symbolic view, F3 would be plotted in Plot view, and evaluated in Numeric view.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SELECT</td>
<td>Selects the named aplet and makes it the current aplet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SETVIEWS</td>
<td>Takes trios of arguments. Used to define entries in the VIEWS menu for aplets. Prompt is the text to display for an entry in the Views menu. Programname is the name of a program to run if the entry is selected. The viewnumber is the number of a view to start after the program finishes running. The views are numbered as follows:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

0. 0 to go to Home  9. Note  10. SketchLibrary
1. Plot  11. List Catalog
2. Symbolic  12. Matrix Catalog
4. Plot-Setup  14. Programs
5. Symbolic-Setup  15. Use 15, 16... for Views menu
6. Numeric-Setup  items

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NCHECK</td>
<td>Unchecks (unselects) the corresponding function in the current aplet. For example, Uncheck 3 would uncheck F3 if the current aplet is Function.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

UNCHECK n
Branch Commands

A programming structure allows a program to control how it should execute depending on given conditions or the values of particular arguments. The HP 38G has two kinds of control structures:

- Branch structures.
- Loop structures.

Branch structures let a program make a decision based on the result of one or more tests. Here is a summary of the branch structures available on the HP 38G. (Unlike the other programming commands, the control structure commands work in logical groups. Therefore, the commands are described together rather than each independently.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IF...THEN... ELSE...END</th>
<th>Executes a sequence of commands in the test-clause only if the test-clause evaluates to true. Its syntax is:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IF test-clause</td>
<td>THEN true-clause ELSE false-clause END</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IF...THEN...ELSE...END</td>
<td>executes the true-clause sequence of commands if the test-clause is true, or the false-clause sequence of commands if the test-clause is false.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Example**

```
1►A:
IF A==1
  THEN MSGBOX A " EQUALS 1":
ELSE MSGBOX A " IS NOT EQUAL TO 1":
END:
```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CASE...END</th>
<th>Executes a series of test-clause commands that execute the appropriate <strong>true-clause</strong> sequence of commands. Its syntax is:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CASE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IF test-clause, THEN true-clause, END</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IF test-clause, THEN true-clause, END</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IF test-clause,, THEN true-clause, END</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>END</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When CASE is executed, test-clause, is evaluated. If the test is true, true-clause, is executed, and execution skips to END. If test-clause, if false, execution proceeds to test-clause,. Execution with the CASE structure continues until a true-clause is executed (or until all the test-clauses evaluate to false).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IFERR...</td>
<td>Many conditions are automatically recognized by the HP 38G as <strong>error conditions</strong>—and they’re automatically treated as errors in programs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THEN...</td>
<td>IFERR...THEN...ELSE allows a program to intercept error conditions that otherwise would cause the program to abort. Its syntax is:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELSE...</td>
<td>IFERR trap-clause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>THEN error-clause ELSE normal-clause END</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RUN</td>
<td>Runs the named program. If your program name contains special characters, such as a space, and then you must enclose the file name in double quotes (** &quot; **).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RUN &quot;program name&quot; or RUN programname</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STOP</td>
<td>Stops the current program.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>STOP</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Drawing Commands

The Drawing commands act on the display. The scale of the display depends on the current aplet's Xmin, Xmax, Ymin, and Ymax values. The following examples assume the HP 38G default settings with the Function aplet as the current aplet.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ARC</td>
<td>Draws an arc with center (x,y), radius, start_angle_measurement, and end_angle_measurement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOX</td>
<td>Draws a box with opposite corners (x1,y1) and (x2,y2).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERASE</td>
<td>Clears the display.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FREEZE</td>
<td>Keeps the display from being updated after a program finishes running.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LINE</td>
<td>Draws a line from (x1, y1) to (x2, y2).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ARC**

\[
\text{ARC } \text{X;Y;RADIUS;START\_ANGLE\_MEASUREMENT;END\_ANGLE\_MEASUREMENT}
\]

**Example**

ARC 0;0;2;0;360
Draws circle centered at (0,0) of radius 2.

**BOX**

\[
\text{BOX } \text{X1;Y1;X2;Y2}
\]

**Example**

BOX -1;-1;1;1
Draws a box, lower corner at (-1,-1), upper corner at (1,1).

**FREEZE**

Use the FREEZE command to display the graphic until the user presses a key.

**LINE**

\[
\text{LINE } \text{X1;Y1;X2;Y2}
\]

**Example**

LINE 0;0;3;3
Draws a line from (0,0) to (3,3).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PIXOFF</strong></td>
<td>Turns off the pixel at the specified coordinates ((x, y)).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| | \[
| \text{PIXOFF} \ x;y
|\]
| **PIXON** | Turns on the pixel at the specified coordinates \((x, y)\). |
| | \[
| \text{PIXON} \ x;y
|\]
| **TLINE** | Toggles the pixels along the line from \((x1, y1)\) to \((x2, y2)\). Any pixel that was turned off, will be turned on; any pixel that was turned on, will be turned off. TLINE can be used to erase a line. |
| | \[
| \text{TLINE} \ x1;y1;x2;y2
|\]
| **Example** | TLINE 0;0;3;3 |
| | Erases previously drawn 45 degree line from \((0,0)\) to \((3,3)\). |
### Graphic Commands

The Graphic commands use the graphics variables G0–G9 as name arguments—or the Page variable from Sketch. Position arguments take the form (x,y). Position coordinates depend on the current aplet’s scale which is specified by Xmin, Xmax, Ymin, and Ymax.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DISPLAY→</td>
<td>Stores the current display in name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DISPLAY→ name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>→DISPLAY</td>
<td>Displays graphic from name in the display.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>→DISPLAY name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>→GROB</td>
<td>Creates a graphic from expression, using font_size, and stores the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>resulting graphic in name. Font sizes are 1, 2, or 3. If the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>font_size argument is 0, the HP 38G creates a graphic display like that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>created by the SHOW operation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>→GROB name;expression;font_size</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GROBNOT</td>
<td>Replaces graphic in name with bitwise-inverted graphic from name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GROBNOT name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GROBOR</td>
<td>Using the logical OR, superimposes graphic onto name starting at the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>specified coordinate in position.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GROBOR name_graphic1;position;name_graphic2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>GROBOR G1;(0,0);G2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GROBXOR</td>
<td>Using the logical XOR, superimposes graphic onto name starting at the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>specified coordinate in position.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GROBXOR name;position; graphic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAKEGROB</td>
<td>Creates graphic with given width, height, and hexadecimal data, and stores</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>it in name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAKEGROB name;width height hex-data</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PLOT→ Stores the Plot view display as a graphic in name.

    PLOT→ name

→PLOT Puts graph from name into the Plot view display.

    →PLOT name

REPLACE Replaces portion of graphic in name with another graphic, starting at position start (in form x,y). REPLACE also works for lists and matrices.

    REPLACE name;(start_x, start_y);graphic

SUB Extracts a portion of a list, matrix, or graphic (specified by start and end—in form x,y), and stores it in name.

    SUB name;graphic;(start_x, start_y);(end_x, end_y)

ZEROGROB Creates a blank graphic with given height.

    ZEROGROB name;width;height;graphic
Loop Commands

A programming structure allows a program to control how it should execute depending on given conditions or the values of particular arguments. The HP 38G has two kinds of control structures:

- Branch structures.
- Loop structures

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DO...UNTIL</th>
<th>DO ... Until ... End is a loop structure that executes the loop-clause repeatedly until test-clause returns a true (nonzero) result. Because the test is executed after the loop-clause, the loop-clause is always executed at least once. Its syntax is: DO loop-clause UNTIL test-clause END</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WHILE...REPEAT...END</td>
<td>While ... Repeat ... End is a loop structure that repeatedly evaluates test-clause and executes loop-clause sequence if the test is true. Because the test-clause is executed before the loop-clause, the loop-clause is not executed if the test is initially false. Its syntax is: WHILE test-clause REPEAT loop-clause END</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FOR I ...TO ...STEP ...END</td>
<td>FOR name=start-expression TO end-expression STEP INCREMENT; loop-clause END</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BREAK</td>
<td>Terminates loop.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Matrix Commands

The Matrix commands use the matrix variables M0–M9 as arguments.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| ADDCOL   | Add Column. Insert values into a column before column_number in the specified matrix. You enter the values as a vector. The values must be separated by commas and the number of values must be the same as the number of rows in the matrix name.  

\[
\text{ADDCOL } \text{name;} \{\text{value}_1, \ldots, \text{value}_n\}; \text{column_number}
\]

| ADDROW   | Add Row. Insert values into a row before row_number in the specified matrix. You enter the values as a vector. The values must be separated by commas and the number of values must be the same as the number of columns in the matrix name.  

\[
\text{ADDCOL } \text{name;} \{\text{value}_1, \ldots, \text{value}_n\}; \text{row_number}
\]

| DELCOL   | Delete Column. Deletes the specified column from the specified matrix.  

\[
\text{DELCOL } \text{name;} \text{column_number}
\]

| DELROW   | Delete Row. Deletes the specified row from the specified matrix.  

\[
\text{DELROW } \text{name;} \text{row_number}
\]

| EDITMAT  | Starts the Matrix Editor and displays the specified matrix. Returns to the program when user presses [OK].  

\[
\text{EDITMAT } \text{name}
\]

Example: EDITMAT M1

Starts the Matrix Editor on matrix M1.

![Matrix Editor Screenshot](image)
**RANMAT**  Creates random matrix with number of rows and columns you specify in *rows, columns*, and stores the result in *name* (name must be M0...M9). The entries will be integers ranging from -9 to 9.

RANMAT name; rows; columns

**Example:**  RANMAT M2; 3; 4:
EDITMAT M2:
Creates a Matrix in M2 with 3 rows and 4 columns; then starts the Matrix Editor and displays matrix M2.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M2</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>-5</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>-2</td>
<td>-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>-9</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EDIT INS DEG DIG OK

**REDIM**  Redimensions the specified matrix to *size*. For a matrix, *size* is a list of two integers (n1, n2). For a vector, *size* is a list containing one integer (n).

REDIM name; {size}

**REPLACE**  Replaces portion of matrix or vector stored in *name* with another starting at position *start*. Start for a matrix is a list containing two numbers; for a vector, it is a single number. Replace also works for lists and graphics.

REPLACE name; start; object

**SCALE**  Multiplies the specified row_number of the specified matrix by *value*.

SCALE name; value; row_number

**SCALEADD**  Multiplies the first specified row of the matrix in *name* by *value*, then adds this result to the second specified row, and stores the result in *name*.

SCALEADD name; value; row1; row2
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SUB</td>
<td>Extracts a sub-object—a portion of a list, matrix, or graphic from object and stores it into name. Start and end are each specified using a list with two numbers for matrix, using a number for vector or lists, or using (x,y) for graphics.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SWAPCOL</td>
<td>Swap Columns. Exchanges column1 and column2 of the specified matrix.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SWAPROW</td>
<td>Swap Rows. Exchanges row1 and row2 in the specified matrix.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Print Commands

These commands print to an HP infrared printer.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PRDISPLAY</td>
<td>Prints the contents of the display.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRHISTORY</td>
<td>Prints all objects in the stack history.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRVAR</td>
<td>Prints name and contents of variable_name.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can also use the PRVAR command to print the contents of a program or a note.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PRVAR program_name;PROG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRVAR note_name;NOTE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Prompt Commands

You can use the following commands to prompt users for input during your program—or to provide information to users.

**BEEP**

Beeps at the at the frequency and time you specify.

```
BEEP frequency; time_in_seconds
```

**Example**

```
BEEP 1024; 5
```

Creates a 5-second beep at 1024 Hz.

**CHOOSE**

Where *name* is the name of the variable from which the number of the initially-highlighted item is retrieved—and into which the number of the chosen item will be stored. *Prompt* is the top-of-box prompt or null (meaning no prompt), and *item-1* through *item-n* are the text items to be displayed. CHOOSE displays a choose box and sets the specified variable to real number 0 through n corresponding to whether the choose box is canceled (0), or an item is chosen (1 through n).

```
CHOOSE name; prompt, item-1...; item-n
```

**Example**

```
3{{STO➤}}A: CHOOSE A; "COMIC STRIPS";
"DILBERT";
"CALVIN&HOBSES";
"BLONDE";
```

![Prompt Box Image]
| **DISP** | Displays *text_item* and a value in display *line_number*. A text_item consists of any number of expressions and quoted strings of text. The expressions are evaluated and turn into strings. Lines are numbered from the top of the screen, 1 being the top and 7 being the bottom.

\[
\text{DISP } \textit{line_number}; \textit{text_item}
\]

**Example** 3; "A is" 2+2

Result: A is 4 (displayed on line 3)

| **DISPTIME** | Displays the current date and time.

\[
\text{DISPTIME}
\]

To set the date and time, simple store the correct settings in the date and time variables. Use the following formats: M.DDYYYY for the date and H.MMSS for the time.

**Examples**

\[
5.151995\{\text{STO\textbf{→}}\}\text{DATE} \text{ (sets the date to May 15, 1995).}
\]

\[
10.1500\{\text{STO\textbf{→}}\}\text{TIME} \text{ (sets the time to 10:15 am).}
\]

| **EDITMAT** | Matrix Editor. Opens the Matrix editor for the specified matrix. Returns to the program when user presses \{OK\}.

\[
\text{EDITMAT } \textit{matrixname}
\]

| **FREEZE** | This command prevents the display from being updated after the program runs. This allows you to view the graphics created by the program. Cancel FREEZE by pressing any key.

\[
\text{FREEZE}
\]

| **GETKEY** | Waits for a key, then stores the keycode rc.p in *name*, where r is row number, c is column number, and p is key-plane number. the key-planes are designated 1 for unshifted, 2 for shifted, 4 for alpha-shifted, and 5 for both alpha-shifted and shifted.

\[
\text{GETKEY } \textit{name}
\]
**INPUT**

Suspends program execution, prompt the user with *title*, *label*, and *help*, initializes the command line with *default*, and saves the resulting input in *name*. Use □ [CHARS] to type the quote marks " ".

```
INPUT name;title,label;help;default
```

**Example**

```
INPUT R; "Circular Area";
 "Radius";
 "Enter Number"; 1:
```

---

**MSGBOX**

Suspends program execution and displays a message box containing *text_item*. A text_item consists of any number of expressions and quoted strings of text. The expressions are evaluated and turned into strings of text. For example, "Area is" 2+2 becomes Area is 4. Use □ [CHARS] to type the quote marks " ".

```
MSGBOX text_item:
```

**Example**

```
1{[STO►]}A:
MSGBOX "AREA IS: ";π*A^2:
```

---

*Programming 8-23*
You can also use the NoteText variable to provide text arguments. This can be used to insert line breaks. For example, press [NOTE] and type AREA IS [ENTER].

**Example**

`MSGBOX NoteText " " π*A^2;`

```
AREA IS
3.14159265359
```

**WAIT**

Halts program execution for specified number of seconds.

`WAIT seconds`
Stat-One and Stat-Two Commands

Analysis of one-variable and two-variable statistical data. You can refer to chapter 5 for complete definitions of these variables.

Stat-One Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>DO1VSTATS</strong></td>
<td>Calculates STATS using <code>datasetname</code> and stores the results in corresponding variables: ( \Sigma, \text{Tot} \Sigma, \text{Mean} \Sigma, \text{PVar} \Sigma, \text{SVar} \Sigma, \text{PSDev}, \text{SSDev}, \text{Min} \Sigma, \text{Q1}, \text{Median}, \text{Q3}, \text{and Max} \Sigma. Datasetname` can be H1, H2, ..., or H5. Datasetname must define at least two data points.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>RANDSEED</strong></td>
<td>Sets random number seed to <code>value</code>. The random number seed is used in the calculation of random numbers by the RANDOM function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SETFREQ</strong></td>
<td>Defines <code>datasetname</code> frequency according to <code>expression</code>. Datasetname can be H1, H2, ..., or H5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SETSAMPLE</strong></td>
<td>Defines <code>datasetname</code> sample according to <code>expression</code>. Datasetname can be H1, H2, ..., or H5.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Stat-Two Commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>DO2VSTATS</strong></td>
<td>Calculates STATS using <code>datasetname</code> and stores the results in corresponding variables: MeanX, ( \Sigma X, \Sigma X^2 ), MeanY, ( \Sigma Y, \Sigma Y^2 ), ( \Sigma XY ), Corr, Cov, and Fit. Datasetname can be S1, S2, ..., or S5. Datasetname must define at least four pairs of data points.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SETDEPEND</strong></td>
<td>Defines <code>datasetname</code> dependent according to <code>expression</code>. Datasetname can be S1, S2, ..., or S5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SETINDEP</strong></td>
<td>Defines <code>datasetname</code> independent according to <code>expression</code>. Datasetname can be S1, S2, ..., or S5.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Storing and Retrieving Variables in Programs

The HP 38G has both Home variables and aplet variables. Home variables are used for real numbers, complex numbers, graphics, lists, and matrices. Home variables keep the same values in Home or in aplets.

Aplet variables are those whose values depend on the current aplet. The aplet variables are used in programming to emulate the definitions and settings you make when working with aplets interactively.

The Variable Menu

You use the Variable menu ([VAR]) to retrieve either Home variables or aplet variables.

To retrieve a Home variable

You can use this procedure to retrieve either the variable name or the variable value into your program.

1. Press [VAR] to open the Variable menu.

2. If necessary, press [[HOME]] to open the list of aplet variables.

   The left side of the display shows the variable categories and the right side shows the variable names.

3. Select a Home variable category.

4. Select a Home variable name.

5. Press [[NAME]] [[OK]] to retrieve the name of the variable.
   or
   Press [[VALUE]] [[OK]] to retrieve the value of the variable.
To retrieve an aplet variable

You can use this procedure to retrieve either the variable name or the variable value into your program.

1. Press [VAR] to open the Variable menu.
2. If necessary, press {APL] to open the list of aplet variables.
3. Select an aplet view.

Each aplet variables is associated with a view: Numeric or Numeric Setup, Symbolic or Symbolic Setup, Plot or Plot Setup, Note, or Sketch.

4. Select an aplet variable name.
5. Press {NAM} {OK} to retrieve the name of the variable.
   or
   Press {VAL} {OK} to retrieve the value of the variable.
**Plot-View Variables**

The following aplet variables are available in Plot View. Not all variables are available in every aplet. S1fit-S5fit, for example, are only available in Statistics. *Under each variable name is a list of the aplets where the variable can be used.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area</th>
<th>Contains the last value found by Area operation in Plot-FCN menu.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Axes</td>
<td>Turns axes-drawing on or off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>From Plot Setup, check (or uncheck) _AXES. or In a program, type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 {{STO▶}}Axes to turn axes-drawing on (default).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 {{STO▶}}Axes to turn axes-drawing off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connect</td>
<td>Draws lines between successively plotted points.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>From Plot Setup, check (or uncheck) _CONNECT. or In a program, type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parametric</td>
<td>1 {{STO▶}}Connect to connect plotted points (default, except in Statistics where the default is off).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polar</td>
<td>0 {{STO▶}}Connect not to connect plotted points.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solve</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Statistics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coord</td>
<td>Turns the coordinate-display mode in Plot view on or off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td>From Plot view, press {{X, Y}} or In a program, type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parametric</td>
<td>1 {{STO▶}}Coord to turn coordinate display on (default).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polar</td>
<td>0 {{STO▶}}Coord to turn coordinate display off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sequence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solve</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Statistics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extremum</td>
<td>Contains the last value found by Extremum operation in the Plot-FCN menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FastRes</td>
<td>Toggles resolution between plotting in every other column (faster), or plotting in every column (more detail).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solve</td>
<td>From Plot Setup, choose Faster or More Detail.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>or In a program, type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 ${\text{STO}}\text{\hspace{1pt}▶}$FastRes for faster (default).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 ${\text{STO}}\text{\hspace{1pt}▶}$FastRes for more detail.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grid</td>
<td>Turns the background grid in Plot View on or off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All Aplets</td>
<td>From Plot Setup, check (or uncheck) _GRID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>or In a program, type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 ${\text{STO}}\text{\hspace{1pt}▶}$Grid to turn the grid on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0 ${\text{STO}}\text{\hspace{1pt}▶}$Grid to turn the grid off (default).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hmin/Hmax</td>
<td>Defines minimum and maximum values for histogram bars.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Statistics</td>
<td>From Plot Setup for one-variable statistics, set value for HRNG.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>or In a program, type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$n$ ${\text{STO}}\text{\hspace{1pt}▶}$Hmin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$n$ ${\text{STO}}\text{\hspace{1pt}▶}$Hmax</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hwidth</td>
<td>Sets the width of histogram bars.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Statistics</td>
<td>In a program, type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$n$ ${\text{STO}}\text{\hspace{1pt}▶}$Hwidth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indep</td>
<td>Defines the value of the independent variable used in Tracing mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All Aplets</td>
<td>In a program, type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$n$ ${\text{STO}}\text{\hspace{1pt}▶}$Indep</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **InvCross** | Toggles between solid crosshairs or inverted crosshairs. (Inverted is useful if background is solid).
From Plot Setup, check (or uncheck) _InvCross
or
In a program, type
1 {{STO►}}InvCross to invert the crosshairs.
0 {{STO►}}InvCross for solid crosshairs (default). |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Isect</strong></td>
<td>Contains the last value found by Intersection operation in the Plot-FCN menu.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Labels** | Draws labels in Plot view showing X and Y ranges.
From Plot Setup, check (or uncheck) _Labels
or
In a program, type
1 {{STO►}}Labels to turn labels on.
0 {{STO►}}Labels to turn labels off (default). |
| **Nmin / Nmax** | Defines the minimum and maximum independent variable values. Appears as the NRNG fields in the Plot Setup input form.
From Plot Setup, enter values for NRNG.
or
In a program, type
n {{STO►}}Nmin
n {{STO►}}Nmax |
| **Recenter** | Recenters at the crosshairs locations when zooming.
From Plot-Zoom-Set Factors, check (or uncheck) _Recenter
or
In a program, type
1 {{STO►}}Recenter to turn recenter on (default).
0 {{STO►}}Recenter to turn recenter off. |
| **Root** | Contains the last value found by Root operation in the Plot-FCN menu. |
| \textbf{S1mark-S5mark} | Defines the mark to use for statistics 2-variable scatter plots. From Plot Setup for two-variable statistics, S1mark-S5mark, then choose a mark. or In a program, type $n \{\text{STO} \boldsymbol{\downarrow}\}\text{S1mark}$ |
| \textbf{SeqPlot} | Toggles type of sequence plot: Stairstep or Cobweb. From Plot Setup, select SeqPlot, then choose Stairstep or Cobweb. or In a program, type 1 $\{\text{STO} \boldsymbol{\downarrow}\}\text{SeqPlot}$ for Stairstep (default). 2 $\{\text{STO} \boldsymbol{\downarrow}\}\text{SeqPlot}$ for Cobweb. |
| \textbf{Simult} | Turns simultaneous function-plotting on or off. When simultaneous function-plotting is on, sequential function-plotting is off. From Plot Setup, check (or uncheck) \_SIMULT or In a program, type 1 $\{\text{STO} \boldsymbol{\downarrow}\}\text{Simult}$ for on (default). 0 $\{\text{STO} \boldsymbol{\downarrow}\}\text{Simult}$ for off. |
| \textbf{Slope} | Contains the last value found by Slope operation in the Plot-FCN menu. |
| \textbf{StatPlot} | Toggles type of 1-variable statistics plot between Histogram or BoxWhisker. From Plot Setup, select StatPlot, then choose Histogram or BoxWhisker. or In a program, type 1 $\{\text{STO} \boldsymbol{\downarrow}\}\text{StatPlot}$ for Histogram (default). 2 $\{\text{STO} \boldsymbol{\downarrow}\}\text{StatPlot}$ for BoxWhisker. |
| **θmin/θmax**<br>Polar | **θmin/θmax**<br>Polar | Defines the minimum and maximum independent values. Appears as the θrng field in the Plot Setup input form.<br>From the Plot Setup input form, enter values for θrng.<br>or<br>In a program, type<br>`n {[STO►]}θmin`
`n {[STO►]}θmax` |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Θstep</strong>&lt;br&gt;Polar</td>
<td><strong>Θstep</strong>&lt;br&gt;Polar</td>
<td>Defines the step size for an independent variable.&lt;br&gt;From the Plot Setup input form, enter values for ΘSTEP.&lt;br&gt;or&lt;br&gt;In a program, type&lt;br&gt;<code>n {[STO►]}Θstep</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Tmin / Tmax**<br>Parametric | **Tmin / Tmax**<br>Parametric | Defines the minimum and maximum independent variable values. Appears as the TRNG fields in the Plot Setup input form.<br>From Plot Setup, enter values for TRNG.<br>or<br>In a program, type<br>`n {[STO►]}Tmin`
`n {[STO►]}Tmax` |
<p>| <strong>Tracing</strong>&lt;br&gt;All Aplets | <strong>Tracing</strong>&lt;br&gt;All Aplets | Turns Tracing mode on or off in Plot view.&lt;br&gt;In a program, type&lt;br&gt;<code>1 {[STO►]}Tracing</code> to turn Tracing mode on (default).&lt;br&gt;<code>0 {[STO►]}Tracing</code> to turn Tracing mode off. |
| <strong>Tstep</strong>&lt;br&gt;Parametric | <strong>Tstep</strong>&lt;br&gt;Parametric | Defines the step size for an independent variable.&lt;br&gt;From the Plot Setup input form, enter values for TSTEP.&lt;br&gt;or&lt;br&gt;In a program, type&lt;br&gt;<code>n {[STO►]}Tstep</code> |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Xcross</strong></th>
<th><strong>Ycross</strong></th>
<th><strong>Xtick</strong></th>
<th><strong>Ytick</strong></th>
<th><strong>Xmin / Xmax</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>All Aplets</strong></td>
<td><strong>All Aplets</strong></td>
<td><strong>All Aplets</strong></td>
<td><strong>All Aplets</strong></td>
<td><strong>All Aplets</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defines the horizontal coordinate of crosshairs. Only works with TRACE off. In a program, type ( n \ {\text{STO}\uparrow})Xcross</td>
<td>Defines the vertical coordinate of crosshairs. Only works with TRACE off. In a program, type ( n \ {\text{STO}\uparrow})Ycross</td>
<td>Defines the distance between tick marks for the horizontal axis. From the Plot Setup input form, enter a value for Xtick. or In a program, type ( n \ {\text{STO}\uparrow})Xtick</td>
<td>Defines the distance between tick marks for the vertical axis. From the Plot Setup input form, enter a value for Ytick. or In a program, type ( n \ {\text{STO}\uparrow})Ytick</td>
<td>Defines the minimum and maximum horizontal values of the plot screen. Appears as the XRNG fields (horizontal range) in the Plot Setup input form. From Plot Setup, enter values for XRNG. or In a program, type ( n \ {\text{STO}\uparrow})Xmin ( n \ {\text{STO}\uparrow})Xmax</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ymin / Ymax</strong></td>
<td><strong>All Aplets</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defines the minimum and maximum vertical values of the plot screen. Appears as the <strong>YRNG</strong> fields (vertical range) in the Plot Setup input form. From Plot Setup, enter the values for <strong>YRNG</strong>. <strong>or</strong> In a program, type $n {\text{STO\uparrow}}Y\text{min}$ $n {\text{STO\uparrow}}Y\text{max}$</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Xzoom</strong></th>
<th><strong>All Aplets</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sets the horizontal zoom factor. From Plot-ZOOM-Set Factors, enter the value for <strong>XZOOM</strong>. <strong>or</strong> In a program, type $n {\text{STO\uparrow}}X\text{ZOOM}$ (default zoom factor is 4).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Yzoom</strong></th>
<th><strong>All Aplets</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sets the vertical zoom factor. From Plot-ZOOM-Set Factors, enter the value for <strong>YZOOM</strong>. <strong>or</strong> In a program, type $n {\text{STO\uparrow}}Y\text{ZOOM}$ (default zoom factor is 4).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Symbolic-View Variables

The following aplet variables are available in Symbolic View.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Angle</th>
<th>All Aplets</th>
<th>Sets the angle mode.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>From Symbolic Setup, choose Degrees, Radians, or Grads for angle measure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>In a program, type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 {\text{STO}} \text{Angle} for Degrees.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 {\text{STO}} \text{Angle} for Radians (default).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3 {\text{STO}} \text{Angle} for Grads.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>F1...F9, F0</th>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Can contain any expression. Independent variable is X.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>'\text{SIN(X) STO} \text{F1(X)}'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>In the above example, you must put single quotes around the expression to keep it from being evaluated before it is stored. Use \text{[CHARS]} to type the single quote mark.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>X1, Y1...X9,Y9</th>
<th>X0,Y0</th>
<th>Parametric</th>
<th>Can contain any expression. Independent variable is T.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>'\text{SIN(4<em>T) STO} \text{Y1(T)} : '2</em>SIN(6*T) STO} \text{X1(T)}'</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>R1...R9, R0</th>
<th>Polar</th>
<th>Can contain any expression. Independent variable is Θ.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>'2<em>SIN(2</em>Θ) STO} \text{R1(Θ)}'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>U1...U9, U0</th>
<th>Sequence</th>
<th>Can contain any expression. Independent variable is N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Example</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>\text{RECUSE {U_0, U_{N-1} N, 1, 2 \ STO} U1(N)}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| E1...E9, E0 Solve | Can contain any equation or expression. *Independent variable is selected by highlighting it in Numeric View.*  
| Example | \( X + Y \times X - 2 = Y \) {{STO\(\geq\)}} E1 |
| S1fit...S5fit Statistics | Defines the *type* of fit to be used by the {{FIT}} operation in Statistics (two-variable), Plot view. You set the type in Symbolic setup as follows:  
| Linear | LogFit | ExpFit | Power | QuadFit | Cubic | Logist | User defined |
| Example | CUBIC {{STO\(\geq\)}} S2fit |
### Numeric-View Variables

The following aplet variables are available in Numeric View.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C1...C9, C0</td>
<td>C0 through C9, and C0 for columns of data. Can contain lists.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Statistics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digits</td>
<td>Number of decimal places to use for Number format. From Solve-Numeric_Setup, enter a value in the second field of Number Format. or In a program, type $n {\text{STO} \downarrow}\text{Digits}$ where $0 \leq n \leq 11$.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All Aplets</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Format</td>
<td>Defines the number display format. From Solve-Numeric_Setup, choose Standard, Fixed, Scientific, Engineering, or Fraction in the Number Format field. or In a program, type $1 {\text{STO} \downarrow}\text{Format}$ for Standard. $2 {\text{STO} \downarrow}\text{Format}$ for Fixed. $3 {\text{STO} \downarrow}\text{Format}$ for Scientific. $4 {\text{STO} \downarrow}\text{Format}$ for Engineering. $5 {\text{STO} \downarrow}\text{Format}$ for Fraction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All Aplets</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NumCol</td>
<td>Defines the highlighted column in Numeric view. In a program, type $n {\text{STO} \downarrow}\text{NumCol}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All Aplets</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NumFont</td>
<td>Toggles the font size in Numeric view. Does not appear in the Num Setup input form. Corresponds to the ${\text{BIG}}$ key in Numeric view. In a program, type $0 {\text{STO} \downarrow}\text{NumFont}$ for small (default). $1 {\text{STO} \downarrow}\text{NumFont}$ for big.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Function</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parametric</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sequence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Statistics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **NumIndep** | List of independent values used by Build Your Own Table.  
| Function | In a program, type  
| Parametric | list {{STO→}}NumIndep  
| Polar |  
| Sequence |  
| **NumRow** | Defines the highlighted row in Numeric view.  
| All Aplets | In a program, type  
| | n {{STO→}}NumRow  
| **NumStart** | Defines the starting value for table in Numeric View.  
| Function | From Num Setup, enter a value for NUMSTART.  
| Parametric | or  
| Polar | In a program, type  
| Sequence | n {{STO→}}NumStart.  
| **NumStep** | Defines the step size (increment value) for an independent variable in Numeric View.  
| Function | From Num Setup, enter a value for NUMSTEP.  
| Parametric | or  
| Polar | In a program, type  
| Sequence | n {{STO→}}NumStep  
| **NumType** | Choose a table format.  
| Function | From Num Setup, choose Automatic or Build Your Own.  
| Parametric | or  
| Polar | In a program, type  
| Sequence | 0 {{STO→}}NumType for Build Your Own.  
| | 1 {{STO→}}NumType for Automatic (default).  
| **NumZoom** | Defines the Zoom factor.  
| Function | From Num Setup, type in a value for NUMZOOM.  
| Parametric | or  
| Polar | In a program, type  
| Sequence | n {{STO→}}NumZoom  

8-38 Programming
**StatMode**

*Statistics*

Toggles mode between 1-variable and 2-variable statistics. Does not appear in the Plot Setup input form. Corresponds to the {{1VAR}} and {{2VAR}} keys in Numeric View.

In a program, type

1 {{STO►}}StatMode for 1VAR.
2 {{STO►}}StatMode for 2VAR.

---

**Note Variables**

The following aplet variable is available in Note View.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NoteText</th>
<th>All Aplets</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>NoteText</strong></td>
<td><strong>Use NoteText to recall text previously entered in Note view.</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Sketch Variables**

The following aplet variables are available in Sketch View.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>All Aplets</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Page** | **Defines a page in a sketch set. A sketch set can contain up to 10 graphics. The graphics can be viewed one at a time using the {{▲PAGE}} and {{PAGE▼}} keys.**  
The Page variable references the currently-displayed page of a sketch set.  
In a program, type  

```
graphic_variable {{STO►}}Page
```
<p>|</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PageNum</strong></th>
<th>All Aplets</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **PageNum** | **Index for referring to a particular page of the sketch set (in Sketch View).**  
In a program, type  

```
n{{STO►}}PageNum
```
|
Menu Maps of the VAR menu

Home Variables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Complex</th>
<th>Graphic</th>
<th>Library</th>
<th>List</th>
<th>Matrix</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Z1...Z9, Z0</td>
<td>G1...G9, G0</td>
<td>Function, Parametric, Polar, Sequence, Solve, Statistics, User-named</td>
<td>L1...L9, L0</td>
<td>M1...M9, M0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Modes</th>
<th>Notepad</th>
<th>Program</th>
<th>Real</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ans</td>
<td>User-named</td>
<td>Editline, User-named</td>
<td>A...Z, 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HAngle</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDigits</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HFormat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ierr</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Function Variables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plot</th>
<th>Symbolic</th>
<th>Numeric</th>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Axes</td>
<td>Xmin</td>
<td>Angle</td>
<td>Digits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Xmax</td>
<td>P1</td>
<td>Format</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coord</td>
<td>Ymin</td>
<td>P2</td>
<td>NumCol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FastRes</td>
<td>Ymax</td>
<td>P3</td>
<td>NumFont</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grid</td>
<td>Xzoom</td>
<td>P4</td>
<td>NumIndep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indep</td>
<td>Yzoom</td>
<td>P5</td>
<td>NumRow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InvCross</td>
<td>Plot-FCN</td>
<td>P6</td>
<td>NumStart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Labels</td>
<td>Area</td>
<td>P7</td>
<td>NumStep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recenter</td>
<td>Extremum</td>
<td>P8</td>
<td>NumType</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simult</td>
<td>Isect</td>
<td>P9</td>
<td>NumZoom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tracing</td>
<td>Root</td>
<td>P0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xcross</td>
<td>Slope</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ycross</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xtick</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ytick</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8-40 Programming
### Parametric Variables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plot</th>
<th>Symbolic</th>
<th>Numeric</th>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Axes</td>
<td>Tstep</td>
<td>Angle</td>
<td>Digits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connect</td>
<td>Xcross</td>
<td>X1</td>
<td>X6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coord</td>
<td>Ycross</td>
<td>Y1</td>
<td>Y7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grid</td>
<td>Xtick</td>
<td>X2</td>
<td>Y7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indep</td>
<td>Ytick</td>
<td>X2</td>
<td>X8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InvCross</td>
<td>Xmin</td>
<td>X3</td>
<td>Y8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Labels</td>
<td>Xmax</td>
<td>X3</td>
<td>X9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recenter</td>
<td>Ymin</td>
<td>X4</td>
<td>Y9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simult</td>
<td>Ymax</td>
<td>X4</td>
<td>X0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tmin</td>
<td>Xzoom</td>
<td>X5</td>
<td>Y0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tmax</td>
<td>Yzoom</td>
<td>Y5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Note</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sketch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PageNum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Polar Variables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plot</th>
<th>Symbolic</th>
<th>Numeric</th>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Axes</td>
<td>Xcross</td>
<td>Angle</td>
<td>Digits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connect</td>
<td>Ycross</td>
<td>R1</td>
<td>Format</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coord</td>
<td>Xtick</td>
<td>R2</td>
<td>NumCol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grid</td>
<td>Ytick</td>
<td>R3</td>
<td>NumFont</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indep</td>
<td>Xmin</td>
<td>R4</td>
<td>NumIndep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InvCross</td>
<td>Xmax</td>
<td>R5</td>
<td>NumRow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Labels</td>
<td>Ymin</td>
<td>R6</td>
<td>NumStart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recenter</td>
<td>Ymax</td>
<td>R7</td>
<td>NumStep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simult</td>
<td>Xzoom</td>
<td>R8</td>
<td>NumType</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>θmin</td>
<td>Yzoom</td>
<td>R9</td>
<td>NumZoom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>θmax</td>
<td></td>
<td>R0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>θstep</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tracing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Note</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sketch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PageNum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Sequence Variables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plot</th>
<th>Symbolic</th>
<th>Numeric</th>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Axes</td>
<td>Xcross</td>
<td>Angle</td>
<td>Digits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coord</td>
<td>Ycross</td>
<td>U1</td>
<td>Format</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grid</td>
<td>Xtick</td>
<td>U2</td>
<td>NumCol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indep</td>
<td>Ytick</td>
<td>U3</td>
<td>NumFont</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InvCross</td>
<td>Xmin</td>
<td>U4</td>
<td>NumIndep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Labels</td>
<td>Xmax</td>
<td>U5</td>
<td>NumRow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nmin</td>
<td>Ymin</td>
<td>U6</td>
<td>NumStart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nmax</td>
<td>Ymax</td>
<td>U7</td>
<td>NumStep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recenter</td>
<td>Xzoom</td>
<td>U8</td>
<td>NumType</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SeqPlot</td>
<td>Yzoom</td>
<td>U9</td>
<td>NumZoom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simult</td>
<td></td>
<td>U0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tracing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Solve Variables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plot</th>
<th>Symbolic</th>
<th>Numeric</th>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Axes</td>
<td>Xcross</td>
<td>Angle</td>
<td>Digits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connect</td>
<td>Ycross</td>
<td>E1</td>
<td>Format</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coord</td>
<td>Xtick</td>
<td>E2</td>
<td>NumCol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FastRes</td>
<td>Ytick</td>
<td>E3</td>
<td>NumRow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grid</td>
<td>Xmin</td>
<td>E4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indep</td>
<td>Xmax</td>
<td>E5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InvCross</td>
<td>Ymin</td>
<td>E6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Labels</td>
<td>Ymax</td>
<td>E7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recenter</td>
<td>Xzoom</td>
<td>E8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tracing</td>
<td>Yzoom</td>
<td>E9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>E0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: NoteText, Sketch, Page, PageNum
## Statistics Variables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plot</th>
<th>Symbolic</th>
<th>Numeric</th>
<th>Stat-One</th>
<th>Stat-Two</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Axes</td>
<td>Angle</td>
<td>C0,...C9</td>
<td>MaxΣ</td>
<td>Corr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connect</td>
<td>S1fit</td>
<td>Digits</td>
<td>MeanΣ</td>
<td>Cov</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coord</td>
<td>S2fit</td>
<td>Format</td>
<td>Median</td>
<td>Fit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grid</td>
<td>S3fit</td>
<td>NumCol</td>
<td>MinΣ</td>
<td>MeanX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hmin</td>
<td>S4fit</td>
<td>NumFont</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>MeanY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hmax</td>
<td>S5fit</td>
<td>NumRow</td>
<td>Q1</td>
<td>RelErr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hwidth</td>
<td></td>
<td>StatMode</td>
<td>Q3</td>
<td>ΣX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indep</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>PSDev</td>
<td>ΣX2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InvCross</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SSDev</td>
<td>ΣXY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Labels</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>PVarΣ</td>
<td>ΣY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recenter</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SVarΣ</td>
<td>ΣY2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S1mark</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>TotΣ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S2mark</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S3mark</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S4mark</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S5mark</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StatPlot</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tracing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xcross</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ycross</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xtick</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ytick</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xmin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xmax</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ymin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ymax</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xzoom</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yxzoom</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Reference Information

This chapter covers the following topics:

- Regulatory information
- Warranty information
- Service information
- Battery information
- How to reset the calculator
- Glossary
- Selected status messages

Regulatory Information

U.S.A. This Handheld Calculator complies with the limits for a class B digital device as specified in Part 15 of FCC Rules, which provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This Handheld Calculator generates and uses radio frequency energy and may interfere with radio and television reception. In the unlikely event that there is interference to radio or television reception (which can be determined by turning the calculator off and on), try the following:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna (radio or television).
- Relocate the calculator with respect to the receiver.

Consult your dealer or an experienced radio/television technician for help.

Canada This Class B digital apparatus meets all requirements of the Canadian Interference-Causing Equipment Regulations.

Cet appareil numérique de la classe B respecte toutes les exigences du Reglement sur le materiel brouilleur du Canada.
| **Europe**  
| **DECLARATIONS OF CONFORMITY**  
| according to ISO/IEC Guide 22 and EN 45014  
| **Manufacturer’s name** | Hewlett-Packard Australia Limited  
| **Manufacturer’s address** | Australian Calculator Operation  
| | 347, Burwood Highway  
| | Burwood East, Victoria 3151  
| | Australia  
| declares that the following product  
| **Product Name** | Handheld Calculator  
| **Model number** | HP 38G  
| **Product options** | All.  
| conforms to the following product specifications  
| **Safety** | IEC 950 : 1986+A1,A2 / EN 60950  
| | (1988)+A1,A2  
| **EMC** | CISPR 22 : 1985 / EN 5502 : 1988 : Class B(1)  
| | EN 50082-1 : 1992  
| | CD, 8kV AD  
| | IEC 801-3 : 1984 / prEN 55024-3 : 1991 - 3V/m  
| | IEC 801-4 : 1988 / prEN 55024-4 : 1992 - 0.5kV  
| | signal lines  
| **Supplementary information** | The product herewith complies with the requirements of the EMC Directive 89/336/EEC.  
| | (1) The product was tested in a typical configuration with Hewlett-Packard personal computer peripherals.  
|  
| European Contact: your local Hewlett-Packard Sales and Service office or Hewlett-Packard GmbH, Department Technical Relations Europe, Herrenberger Str. 130, D71034 Böblingen. (Fax: +49-703-143143)  

9-2 Reference Information
Limited One-Year Warranty

What Is Covered

The calculator (except for the batteries, or damage caused by the batteries) and calculator accessories are warranted by Hewlett-Packard against defects in materials and workmanship for one year from the date of original purchase. If you sell your unit or give it as a gift, the warranty is automatically transferred to the new owner and remains in effect for the original one-year period. During the warranty period, we will repair or, at our option, replace at no charge a product that proves to be defective, provided you return the product, shipping prepaid, to a Hewlett-Packard service center. (Replacement may be made with a newer model of equal or better functionality.)

This warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights that vary from state to state, province to province, or country to country.

What Is Not Covered

Batteries, and damage caused by the batteries, are not covered by the Hewlett-Packard warranty. Check with the battery manufacturer about battery and battery leakage warranties.

This warranty does not apply if the product has been damaged by accident or misuse or as the result of service or modification by other than an authorized Hewlett-Packard service center.

No other express warranty is given. The repair or replacement of a product is your exclusive remedy. ANY OTHER IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS IS LIMITED TO THE ONE-YEAR DURATION OF THIS WRITTEN WARRANTY. Some states, provinces, or countries do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, so the above limitation may not apply to you. IN NO EVENT SHALL HEWLETT-PACKARD COMPANY BE LIABLE FOR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES. Some states, provinces, or countries do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitation or exclusion may not apply to you.

Products are sold on the basis of specifications applicable at the time of manufacture. Hewlett-Packard shall have no obligation to modify or update products, once sold.

In Australia and the U.K.:

The above disclaimers and limitations shall not apply to consumer transactions in Australia and the United Kingdom and shall not affect the statutory rights of consumers.
Service

Environmental Limits

- Operating temperature: 0° to 45°C (32° to 113°F).
- Storage temperature: -20° to 65°C (-4° to 149°F).
- Operating and storage humidity: 90% relative humidity at 40°C (104°F) maximum. Avoid getting the calculator wet.
- Battery operated at 4.5V dc, 60mA maximum.

Customer Support

In the United States. If you have technical questions about how to use the product that are not covered in this guide, you can contact

Hewlett-Packard Calculator Support
1000 NE Circle Blvd.
Corvallis OR 97330 U.S.A.
(503) 715-2004; Fax (503) 715-3628
Mon.-Fri. 8:00 am–3:00 pm Pacific time. Closed holidays. Allow two weeks for replies to mailed or faxed questions.

Outside the United States. Your authorized Hewlett-Packard dealer is committed to providing after-sale support. Authorized dealers are able to provide local, personal support, and they are backed by the resources of the Hewlett-Packard Company.

HP Electronic Information Service. This computer service provides calculator information free of charge. You pay only for the phone call or Internet service. There are two ways to connect to this service from a computer:

- **Via modem**: (503)715-4448. It operates at 2400/9600/14400 baud, full duplex, no parity, 8 bits, 1 stop bit.
- **Via the Internet**: Access hpcvbbs.external.hp.com (or 192.6.221.13) using telnet, ftp, or a World-Wide-Web browser (http://hpcvbbs.external.hp.com).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hardware Service</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Contact Hewlett-Packard for diagnostic instructions and other service information before you send your calculator for repair.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**In the United States.** Send the calculator to the Corvallis Service Center listed on the inside of the back cover.

**Outside the U.S.** Contact your Hewlett-Packard dealer or sales office for the location of the nearest service center. *Do not ship the calculator for service without first contacting a Hewlett-Packard office.*

If local service is unavailable, you can ship the calculator to the Corvallis Service Center for repair. All shipping, reimportation arrangements, and customs costs are your responsibility.

**Service Charge.** Contact the Corvallis Service Center (inside back cover) for the standard out-of-warranty repair charges. This charge is subject to the customer's local sales or value-added tax wherever applicable.

Calculator products damaged by accident or misuse are not covered by the fixed charges. These charges are individually determined based on time and material.

**Shipping Instructions.** If your calculator requires service, ship it to the nearest authorized service center or collection point.

- Include your return address and a *detailed description* of the problem. Details should include error messages and any peripherals connected at the time of malfunction.
- Include proof of purchase date if the warranty has not expired.
- Include a purchase order, check, or credit card number plus expiration date (VISA or MasterCard) to cover the standard repair charge.
- Ship your calculator postage *prepaid* in adequate protective packaging to prevent damage. Shipping damage is not covered by the warranty, so we recommend that you insure the shipment.
Warranty on Service. Service is warranted against defects in materials and workmanship for 90 days from the date of service.

Service Agreements. In the U.S., a support agreement is available for repair and service. For additional information, contact the Corvallis Service Center (inside back cover).

HP Marketing Headquarters Outside the U.S.

Should you need to contact Hewlett-Packard, check your local telephone directory for the HP Sales and Service Office nearest you. If you cannot locate an HP office, contact one of the Worldwide HP Marketing Headquarters listed below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ASIA</th>
<th>LATIN AMERICA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Far East Sales Region Hqtrs.</td>
<td>Hewlett-Packard Latin American</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hewlett-Packard Asia Ltd.</td>
<td>Hqtrs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22nd Floor, West Tower, Bond Centre</td>
<td>Monte Pelvoux 111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPO Box 863 Hong Kong</td>
<td>Lomas de Chapultepec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11000 México D.F.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EUROPE</th>
<th>OTHER AREAS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>European Operations Hqtrs.</td>
<td>Hewlett-Packard Intercon Operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hewlett-Packard S.A.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150, route du Nant-d'Avril</td>
<td>3495 Deer Creek Road</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH 1217 Meyrin 2</td>
<td>P.O. Box 10495</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geneva, Switzerland</td>
<td>Palo Alto, CA 94303-0896 USA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Batteries

When battery power is low, the (●) annunciator stays on, even when the calculator is off. There is also a warning message that appears when the calculator is on,

Warning: Low Bat.

The HP 38G uses three AAA batteries. Be sure all three are of the same brand and type. Rechargeable batteries are not recommended because of their lower capacity and more sudden demise.

To change the batteries

1. Turn the calculator off and place the slide cover over the keyboard to keep from pressing keys.

CAUTION

Your calculator can lose memory if it is turned on while the batteries are being removed.

2. Slide the battery compartment door off the rear of the calculator by pressing down on the dimple and pushing the door off.

3. Replace the batteries within 2 minutes to avoid memory loss. Position the fresh batteries according to the diagram inside the battery compartment—it is easiest to install the flat end of each battery first.

CAUTION

Do not mutilate, puncture, or dispose of batteries in fire. The batteries contain hazardous chemicals and can explode.
Resetting the HP 38G

If the calculator “locks up” and seems to be stuck, you must reset it. This is much like resetting a PC. It cancels certain operations, restores certain conditions, and clears temporary memory locations. However, it does not clear stored data (variables, aplet databases, programs) unless you use the procedure below, “To erase all memory and reset defaults”.

To reset using keystrokes

Press and hold the [ON] key and the top-row left-middle key (top row, third from left) simultaneously, then release them.

To reset using the reset hole

If the calculator does not respond to the above key sequence, then

1. Turn the calculator over and locate the small hole below the bump (upper right). Insert the end of a straightened metal paper clip into the hole until it reaches the bottom. Hold it there for 1 second, then remove it.


To erase all memory and reset defaults

If the calculator does not respond to the above resetting procedures, you might need to restart it by erasing all of memory. You will lose everything you have stored. All factory-default settings are restored.

1. Press and hold the [ON] key, the leftmost top-row key, and the rightmost top-row key simultaneously.

2. To cancel this process, release only the top-row keys, then press the left-middle top-row key.

3. To proceed, release all keys.

Memory Specifications

- 32 KB of RAM (user memory).
- 512 KB of ROM (built-in software).
Glossary

**aplet**  A small application, limited to one topic. The built-in aplet types are Function, Parametric, Polar, Sequence, Solve, and Statistics. An aplet can be filled with the data and solutions for a specific problem. It is reusable (like a program, but easier to use) and it records all your settings and definitions.

**command**  An operation for use in programs. Commands can store results in variables, but do not display results. Arguments are separated by semi-colons and no parentheses, such as `DISP expression; line#`.

**expression**  A number, variable, or algebraic expression (numbers plus functions) that produces a value.

**function**  An operation, possibly with arguments, that returns a result. It does not store results in variables. The arguments must be enclosed in parentheses and separated with commas (or periods in Comma mode), such as `CROSS(matrix1,matrix2)`.

**Home**  The basic starting point of the calculator. Go to Home to do calculations.

**Library**  For aplet management: to start, save, reset, send and receive aplets.

**list**  A set of values separated by commas (periods if the Decimal Mark is Comma) and enclosed in braces. Lists are commonly used to enter statistical data and to evaluate a function at multiple values. Created and manipulated by the List editor and catalog.

**matrix**  A two-dimensional array of values separated by commas (periods if the Decimal Mark is Comma) and enclosed in nested brackets. Created and manipulated by the Matrix catalog and editor. Vectors are also handled by the Matrix catalog and editor.

**menu**  A choice of operations given in the display. It can appear as a list or as a set of **menu-key labels** across the bottom of the display.

**menu keys**  The top row of keys. Their operations depend on the current context. The labels in the bottom of the display
show the current meanings.

**note**  
Text that you write in the Notepad or in the Note view for a specific aplet.

**program**  
A reusable set of instructions that you record using the Program editor.

**sketch**  
A drawing that you make in the Sketch view for a specific aplet.

**variable**  
The name of a number, list, matrix, note, or graphic that is stored in memory. Use [{STO→}] to store and use [VAR] to retrieve.

**vector**  
A one-dimensional array of values separated by commas (periods if the Decimal Mark is Comma) and enclosed in single brackets. Created and manipulated by the Matrix catalog and editor.

**views**  
The possible contexts for an aplet: Plot, Plot Setup, Numeric, Numeric Setup, Symbolic, Symbolic Setup, Sketch, Note, and special views like split screens.
## Selected Status Messages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bad Argument Type</td>
<td>Incorrect input for this operation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bad Argument Value</td>
<td>The value is out of range for this operation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinite Result</td>
<td>Math exception, such as 1/0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insufficient Memory</td>
<td>You must recover some memory to continue operation. Delete one or more</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>matrices, lists, notes, or programs (using catalogs), or custom (not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>built-in) aplets (using [UB]).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insufficient Statistics Data</td>
<td>Not enough data points for the calculation. For two-variable statistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>there must be two columns of data, and each column must have at least four</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>numbers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Invalid Dimension</td>
<td>Array argument had wrong dimensions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Invalid Statistics Data</td>
<td>Need two columns with equal numbers of data values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Invalid Syntax</td>
<td>The function or command you entered does not include the proper arguments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>or order of arguments. The delimiters (parentheses, commas, periods, and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>semi-colons) must also be correct. Look up the function name in the index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>to find its proper syntax.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name Conflict</td>
<td>The I (where) function attempted to assign a value to the variable of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>integration or summation index.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No Equations Checked</td>
<td>You must enter and check an equation (Symbolic view) before evaluating this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(OFF SCREEN)</td>
<td>Function value, root, extremum, or intersection is not visible in the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>current screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Receive Error</td>
<td>Problem with data reception from another calculator. Re-send the data.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Selected Status Messages, continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Too Few Arguments</td>
<td>The command requires more arguments than you supplied.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Undefined Name</td>
<td>The global variable named does not exist.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Undefined Result</td>
<td>The calculation has a mathematically undefined result (such as 0/0).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Out of Memory</td>
<td>You must recover a lot of memory to continue operation. Delete one or more</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>matrices, lists, notes, or programs (using catalogs), or custom (not built-in) aplets (using [LIB]).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

Special Characters
\( \pi \), 2-16
\( \pi \) (constant), 2-19
\( \pi \)LIST, 7-5
\( \delta \) (derivative), 2-12, 2-17
\( f \) (integral), 2-12, 2-17
\( \leq \) (logical test), 2-27
\( \Delta \) (warning), 1-5
\( \alpha \) annunciator (alpha), 1-6
\( \$ \) annunciator (busy), 1-6
\( \Delta \) annunciator (stack history), 1-6
\( \text{key (shift), 1-2} \)
\( \sqrt{\cdot} \), 2-16
\( \text{\textless \textrhd} \) annunciator (shift), 1-6
\( \text{\textgreater \textrhd} \) annunciator (data transfer), 1-6
\( \check{\text{CHK}} \)
in Statistics, 5-12
\( \Delta \text{LIST}, 7-5 \)
\( \text{ORng, 8-32} \)
\( \Theta \text{NG} \) (angle range), 3-18
\( \Theta \text{STEP}, 8-32 \)
plotting, 3-18
\( \Sigma \) function, 2-21
\( \Sigma \text{LIST}, 7-5 \)
\( \Sigma X, 5-19 \)
\( \Sigma X2, 5-19 \)
\( \Sigma XY, 5-19 \)
\( \Sigma Y, 5-19 \)
\( \Sigma Y2, 5-19 \)
\( \% \) (percent), 2-25
\( \% \text{CHANGE}, 2-25 \)
\( \% \text{TOTAL}, 2-25 \)
\( \leq \) (logical test), 2-27
\( = \) (for equations), 2-26
\( == \)
( logical test), 2-27
\( > \) (logical test), 2-27
\( l \) (where), 2-26
\( 10^x, 2-15 \)
\( 1 \text{VAR}, 5-6, 5-11, 5-16, 5-19 \)
\( 1 \text{VAR} \) statistics
example, 5-7

2
2VAR, 5-9, 5-11, 5-16, 5-19

A
absolute value, 2-16
ACOS, 2-15
ACOSH, 2-20
ACOT, 2-28
ACSC, 2-28
add, 2-15
ADDCLR (add column), 8-18
adding
column in a matrix, 8-18
row in a matrix, 8-18
ADDROW (add row), 8-18
adjusting the display, 1-6
algebraic entry, 2-1
ALOG, 2-20
Alpha lock, 1-18
alphabetical sorting, 1-26
AND, 2-27
angle formats
Degrees, 2-15
Grads, 2-15
Radians, 2-15
angle measure
setting, 1-8
angle measure setup, 3-4
angle mode
in Statistics, 5-12
angles
converting, 2-24
annunciators, 1-6
Ans (last answer), 2-4
Ans variable, 1-10
ANSWER, 1-10, 2-4
antilog, 2-15
antilogarithm, 2-20
aplet
definition of, 99
Aplet commands
CHECK, 8-10
SELECT, 8-10
SETVIEWS, 8-10
UNCHECK, 8-10

Index-1
APLET menu key, 2-8
aplet variables, 1-18, 2-10
for settings, 2-10
in Plot view, 8-28
new, 2-10
retrieving, 8-27
aplet views
canceling operations in, 1-14
changing, 1-13
edit line, 1-16
note, 1-13
Numeric view, 1-12
Plot view, 1-12
sketch, 1-13
split-screen, 1-13
Symbolic view, 1-12
aplets
attaching notes, 1-16
attaching sketches, 1-16
calculating in, 1-16
clearing, 1-26
copying, 1-27
creating new, 1-26
defined, 1-11
deleting, 1-26
defining, 1-25
Library, 1-25
naming, 1-26
Note view, 1-18
opening, 1-25
Parametric functions, 1-11
Polar functions, 1-11
receiving, 1-27
resetting, 1-26
sending, 1-27
Sequence functions, 1-12
size of, 1-25
Sketch view, 1-18
Solve, 4-1
sorting, 1-26
starting, 1-25
Statistic functions, 1-12
ARC, 8-13
arccos, 2-15
arcsin, 2-15
arctan, 2-16
area
graphical, 3-20
interactive, 3-20
Area variable, 8-28
ARG, 2-18
arguments
with matrices, 6-9
arithmetic
list, 7-4
arithmetic operations, 1-3
in matrices, 6-6
ASEC, 2-28
ASIN, 2-15
ASINH, 2-20
ATAN, 2-16
ATANH, 2-20
attaching
a note to an aplet, 1-16
a sketch to an aplet, 1-16
Auto Scale, 3-16
AXES
plotting, 3-19
Axes variable, 8-28
B
bad argument, 9-11
bad guesses
Solve aplet, 4-7
batteries
changing, 9-7
low-battery warning, 9-7
BEEP, 8-21
BIG, 1-22, 3-23
in Statistics, 5-11
BOX, 1-21, 8-13
box zoom, 3-14, 3-15
box-and-whisker plot, 5-20
box-and-whisker plots, 5-19
BoxWhisker plot, 8-31
Branch commands
CASE...END, 8-12
IF...THEN...ELSE...END, 8-11
IFERR...THEN...ELSE, 8-12
RUN, 8-12
STOP, 8-12
Branch structures, 8-11
BREAK, 8-17
build your own table, 3-26
C
C menu label
in Statistics, 5-12
C1...C0
calculating
in aplet view, 1-16
root, 4-8
with last result, 2-5
calculator
  automatic turn-off feature, 1-2
  protective cover, 1-1
  repair service, 9-5
  support, 9-4
  warranty, 9-3
calculus operations, 2-17
CANCEL key, 1-1
canceling
  menu lists, 1-11
  operation in aplet view, 1-14
canceling operations, 1-1
CASE...END, 8-12
catalogs, 1-16
categories
  variable, 2-8
CEILING, 2-24
center zoom, 3-14
changing
  angle measure, 3-4
  batteries, 9-7
characters
  typing, 1-18
CHECK, 8-10
checkmarking, 1-8
Chi Squared, upper-tail probability, 2-23
CHOOS input, 3-18
CHOOS shortcut, 3-18
CHOOSE, 8-21
chronological sorting, 1-26
CIRCL, 1-21
CLEAR, 3-18, 3-25
clearing
  display history, 2-6
  edit line, 2-6
  lists, 7-2
  matrices, 6-4
  plots, 3-7
  settings, 3-18
clearing aplets, 1-26
clearing characters, 2-4
clearing display, 2-4
clearing edit line, 2-4
Clearing settings
  Setup view, 3-25
CMDS, 2-13
cobweb graphs, 3-2, 3-10
coefficients
  polynomial, 2-22
  regression, 5-21
COLNORM, 6-10
column norm
  matrix, 6-10
columns
  changing position, 8-20
  statistical data, 5-5
COMB, 2-23
combinations, 2-23
Comma mode, 1-7
  with matrices, 6-9, 7-4
command
  definition of, 9-9
commands
  Aplet, 8-10
  Branch, 8-11
  Drawing, 8-13
  Graphic, 8-15
  in programs, 8-1
  Loop, 8-17
  Print, 8-20
  Prompt, 8-21
  Stat-One, 8-25
  Stat-Two, 8-25
  with matrices, 6-9
commas
  in numbers, 1-7
complex functions, 2-16, 2-18, 2-25
complex numbers, 2-4
  entering, 2-4
composition functions, 2-13
computed statistics, 5-16
CONCAT, 7-4
COND, 6-10
condition number, 6-10
CONJ, 2-18
conjugate, 2-18
CONNECT
  plotting, 3-19
Connect variable, 8-28
connectivity kit, 1-27
CONS, 2-13
Constant?
  Solve aplet, 4-7
constants, 2-19
contrast
decreasing display, 1-6
increasing display, 1-6
Coord variable, 8-28
cordinate display, 3-13
copying
from display, 1-9
programs, 8-8
copying notes, 1-19
CORR, 5-19, 5-21
correlation
statistical, 5-18
correlation coefficient, 5-21
COS (cosine), 2-15
COSH, 2-20
COT (cotangent), 2-28
COV, 5-19
covariance
statistical, 5-18
cover
calculator, 1-1
creating
new aplet, 1-26
notes in Notepad, 1-23
programs, 8-3
random matrix, 8-19
set of sketches, 1-22
CROSS, 6-10
cross product
vector, 6-10
crosshairs
horizontal coordinate, 8-33
CSC (cosecant), 2-28
CSWAP (column swap), 8-20
curve fitting, 5-14
curve-fitting, 5-21
customer support, 9-4
D
data points
number for D02VSTATS, 8-25
number for D01VSTATS, 8-25
date (setting), 8-22
debugging programs, 8-7
decimal format
changing marker, 1-7
decimal mark, 1-7
Decimal scaling, 3-16
decreasing display contrast, 1-6
defining
expressions, 3-3
defining function
Numeric view, 3-23
definite integration, 2-12
DEFN, 3-23
in Statistics, 5-23
DEG annunciator, 1-6
DEG→RAD (degrees to radians), 2-24
Degrees format, 2-15
DELCOL (delete column), 8-18
deleting
aplets, 1-26
lists, 7-2
matrices, 6-4
statistical data, 5-13
deleting programs, 8-7
delimiters (programming), 8-1
DELRROW (delete row), 8-18
demo, 1-2
dependent variable
statistical, 5-10
derivatives, 2-12
DET, 6-10
determinant
square matrix, 6-10
differentiation, 2-12
digit entry mode, 1-7
disk drive
aplet, 1-27
display, 8-15
adjusting contrast, 1-6
annunciator line, 1-6
clearing, 1-6
Engineering, 1-7
Fixed, 1-7
Fraction, 1-7
parts of, 1-6
printing contents, 8-20
Scientific, 1-7
setting modes, 1-7
soft-key labels, 1-7
Standard, 1-7
display history, 1-9, 2-4
clearing, 2-6
scrolling through, 2-5
display line
repeating, 1-9
Display modes
setting, 1-7
displaying
date and time, 8-22
full number, 1-10
matrices, 6-4
divide, 2-15
DO...UNTIL...END, 8-17
DO1VSTATS, 8-25
DO2VSTATS, 8-25
DOT, 6-10
Dot mode, 1-7
dot product
matrix, 6-10
DRAW, 1-20
DRAW keys, 1-22
drawing
set of sketches, 1-22
drawing boxes, 1-21
drawing circles, 1-21
Drawing commands
ARC, 8-13
BOX, 8-13
ERASE, 8-13
FREEZE, 8-13
LINE, 8-13
PIXOFF, 8-14
PIXON, 8-14
TLINE, 8-14
drawing lines, 1-21
E
c (constant), 2-19
e^x, 2-20
EDIT
  in Statistics, 5-11, 5-12
edit line
  clearing, 2-6
  recalling a number, 1-17
editing
  input form fields, 1-8
  matrices, 6-3, 8-18
  notes, 1-19
  programs, 8-3, 8-5
editing an aplet, 1-25
Editline, 8-2
EDITMAT, 8-22
editors, 1-16
EIGENVAL, 6-10
eigenvalues, 6-10
eigenvectors, 6-10
EIGENV, 6-10
Engineering format, 1-7
Engineering number format, 1-7
ENTER, 2-5
entering
  statistical data, 5-6, 5-9
equal sign
  not in expressions, 4-2
equals
  for equations, 2-26
equations
  plotting, 4-6
  solving, 4-2
ERASE, 8-13
erasing. See clearing
error messages, 9-12
EVAL
  in Statistics, 5-12
evaluating formal variables, 2-26
evaluation, 3-5
  polynomial, 2-22
example
  sequence plotting, 3-33
examples
  function plotting, 3-28
  parametric plotting, 3-30
  polar plotting, 3-32
  setting the angle measure, 1-8
  speed-searching, 1-11
executing
  programs, 8-7
  exiting views, 1-13
EXP, 2-20
EXPM1, 2-20
exponent
  raising to, 2-16
  exponent minus 1, 2-20
  exponential, 2-15, 2-20
  exponential fit, 5-15
expression
  definition of, 9-9
expressions
  defining, 3-3, 4-2
  entering, 2-1
  evaluating in aplets, 3-5
  evaluating in Home, 3-5
  literal, 2-26
extremum
  interactive, 3-20
  Solve aplet, 4-7
Extremum variable, 8-29

F
f distribution, upper-tail probability, 2-23
factorial, 2-23
factorial (!), 2-23
FastRes variable, 8-29
fit, 5-21
  choosing, 5-14
  defining your own, 5-16
in Statistics, 5-23
Fit1...Fit0, 5-10, 5-14
Fixed display, 1-7
Fixed number format, 1-7
FLOOR, 2-24
FNROOT, 2-24
FOR...TO...STEP...END, 8-17
forecasting, 5-24
formal names, 2-11
formal variables
  evaluating, 2-26
FRAC (fractional part), 2-24
Fraction number format, 1-7
fractions
  changing result to, 1-8
  Number format, 1-8
Fractions mode
  changing to, 2-3
FREEZE, 8-13, 8-22
frequencies
  in statistics, 5-6
full-precision display, 1-7
function
  definition of, 9-9
Function aplet, 1-11
function composition, 2-13
Function definition, 3-3
Function example, 3-6, 3-8
function plotting
  defined, 3-2
example, 3-28
Function variables
  Area, 8-28
  Axes, 8-28
  Connect, 8-28
  Coord, 8-28
  Extremum, 8-29
  FastRes, 8-29
  Grid, 8-29
  Indep, 8-29
  InvCross, 8-30
  lsect, 8-30
  Labels, 8-30
  Recenter, 8-30
  Root, 8-30
  Simult, 8-31
  Slope, 8-31
  Trace, 8-32
  Xcross, 8-33
  Ycross, 8-33
functions. See math functions
  entering, 2-1

G
gamma function, 2-23
generating (random number.), 8-25
GETKEY, 8-22
glossary, 9-9
GRAD annunciator (grads mode), 1-6
Grads format, 2-15
Graphic commands
  DISPLAY, 8-15
  GROB, 8-15
  GROBNOT, 8-15
  GROBOR, 8-15
  GROBXOR, 8-15
  MAKEGROB, 8-15
  PLOT, 8-16
  REPLACE, 8-16
  SUB, 8-16
  ZEROGROB, 8-16
graphics
  drawing, 1-20
  recalling, 1-23
  storing, 1-23
graphics entry, 1-18
graphics variable
  storing and recalling, 1-23
graphing. See plotting
GRID
  plotting, 3-19
Grid variable, 8-29
GROB, 8-15
GROBNOT, 8-15
GROBOR, 8-15

H
H1...H0, 5-7
hardware service, 9-5
histogram, 5-20
histogram bars
setting min/max values for, 8-29
histogram range, 5-22
histogram variable, 5-7
histogram width, 5-22
histograms, 5-19
   adjusting, 5-19
   plotting limit, 5-7
Histogram plot, 8-31
history. See stack history
   Home, 1-9
   Hmax, 8-29
   Hmin, 8-29
   HMS→, 2-24
Home, 1-2
   calculating in, 2-1
Home display, 1-9
   reusing lines, 1-9
HOME menu key, 2-8, 2-11
Home variables, 1-18, 2-8
   accessing, 2-9
   retrieving, 8-26
horizontal zoom, 8-34
HRNG, 5-22, 8-29
HWIDTH, 5-19, 5-20, 5-22
Hwidth variable, 8-29
hyperbolic functions, 2-20
I
   I (constant), 2-19
   IF...THEN...ELSE...END, 8-11
   IFERR...THEN...ELSE, 8-12
   IFT, 2-27
   IM, 2-18
   imaginary part, 2-18
   implied
      multiplication, 2-2
importing
   notes, 1-19
increasing display contrast, 1-6
indefinite integration, 2-12
Indep variable
   defined for Tracing mode, 8-29
independent values
   adding to table, 3-23
independent variable
   defining step size, 8-32
      statistical, 5-10
      infinite result, 9-11
      infrared
   transmission of aplets between
      machines, 1-27
initial guess
   Solve, 4-5
input, 8-23
   last, 2-5
input forms, 1-10
   editing fields, 1-8
   resetting default values, 1-9
   setting Display with, 1-7
   setting Modes, 1-8
INS
   in Statistics, 5-11
   insufficient memory, 9-11
   insufficient statistics data, 9-11
   INT (integer part), 2-24
   integer rank
      matrix, 6-11
      Integer scaling, 3-16
      integration, 2-12
interpreting
   intermediate guesses, 4-8
interrupting
   plotting, 3-7
intersection
   interactive, 3-20
INV. CROSS
   plotting, 3-19
invalid dimension, 9-11
invalid statistics data, 9-11
invalid syntax, 9-11
InvCross variable, 8-30
inverse, 6-10
   complex, 2-16
   multiplicative, 2-16
inverse hyperbolic functions, 2-20
inverting
   matrices, 6-7
lsect variable, 8-30
ISOLATE, 2-26
isolating variables, 2-26
ITERATE, 2-21
K
keyboard
   alpha, 1-2
   arithmetic operations, 1-3
   editing keys, 1-5
   entry keys, 1-5
   labels, 1-3
list keys, 7-2
math functions, 1-3
menu keys, 1-3
Notepad keys, 1-24
Symbolic view, 3-3
keying in letters, 1-2
keys
inactive, 1-5
Program catalog, 8-3
keystrokes
shifted, 1-2

L
labeling
parts of a sketch, 1-22
LABELS
axes, 3-19
Labels variable, 8-30
last answer, 1-10, 2-4
letters
keying in, 1-2
Library
managing aplets in, 1-25
Library keys, 1-25
LINE, 1-21, 8-13
linear equations
solving systems of, 6-8
linear expression
testing for, 2-26
linear fit, 5-15
LINEAR?, 2-26
list
deleting, 7-2
variables, 7-1
list element
displaying, 7-2
list elements
maximum of, 7-7
mean of, 7-7
median of, 7-7
minimum of, 7-7
number of, 7-7
storing, 7-1, 7-3, 7-4
sum of, 7-7
list items
deleting, 7-2
editing, 7-2
lists
arithmetic with, 7-4
calculating product of, 7-5
calculating sum of elements in, 7-5
composed from differences, 7-5
concatenating, 7-4
counting elements in, 7-5
creating, 7-1, 7-3, 7-5
creating in Home, 7-3
deleting, 7-2
displaying, 7-2
editing, 7-2
functions, 7-4
menu, 1-10
returning position of element in, 7-5
reversing order in, 7-5
sending and receiving, 7-3
sorting elements, 7-5
statistical values, 7-7
storing elements, 7-1, 7-3
storing one element, 7-4
using in expressions, 7-6
using to store statistics, 5-5
LN, 2-15
LNP1, 2-20
log
natural, 2-20
LOG (common logarithm), 2-15
logarithmic fit, 5-15
logarithmic functions, 2-15
logistic fit, 5-15
Loop commands
BREAK, 8-17
DO...UNTIL...END, 8-17
FOR I =, 8-17
WHILE...REPEAT...END, 8-17
loop functions, 2-21
low battery, 1-2
lowercase letters, 1-2
LQ factorization), 6-11
LSQ (least squares), 6-11
LU decomposition of a square, 6-11
M
MAKEGROB, 8-15
MAKELIST, 7-5
MAKEMAT (make matrix), 6-11
MANT (mantissa), 2-24
mantissa, 2-6
MATEDIT (Matrix Editor), 8-22
math functions
selecting, 2-13
math keyboard operations, 2-16
MATH menu, 1-4, 2-13
structure of, 2-13
math operations, 2-1
enclosing arguments, 2-2
in scientific notation, 2-2
negative numbers in, 2-2
matrices
adding columns, 8-18
arithmetic operations in, 6-6
assembly from vectors, 6-1
creating, 6-2
creating random, 8-19
dividing by a square matrix, 6-7
editing, 6-3, 8-18
inverting, 6-7
multiplying, 6-7
multiplying by a vector, 6-7
negating elements, 6-7
re dimensioning, 8-19
sending and receiving, 6-4
storing elements, 6-2
matrix
commands, 6-9
creating in Home, 6-5
deleting, 6-4
displaying, 6-4
functions, 6-9, 6-10
variables, 6-1
Matrix commands
ADDCOL, 8-18
ADDR OW, 8-18
DELCOL, 8-18
DELROW, 8-18
EDITMAT, 8-18
RANDMAT, 8-19
REDIM, 8-19
REPLACE, 8-19
SCALE, 8-19
SCALEADD, 8-19
SUB, 8-20
SWAPCOL, 8-20
SWAPROW, 8-20
matrix element
displaying, 6-4
storing one, 6-5
matrix elements
storing, 6-2, 6-5
matrix functions
ROWNORM (row norm), 6-11
matrix row, column
deleting, 6-4
matrix size, 6-12
MAX (maximum), 2-25
MAXΣ, 5-17
of list, 7-7
maximum number, 2-3
MAXREAL, 2-19
mean
statistical, 5-18
weighted, 5-7
MEANΣ, 5-17
of list, 7-7
MEANX, 5-19
MEANY, 5-19
MEDIAN, 5-17
of list, 7-7
memory, 9-11
amount available, 9-8
clearing all, 9-8
out of, 9-12
saving, 1-16, 2-6
menu
MATH, 2-13
menu keys, 1-3
menu lists, 1-10
canceling, 1-11
searching, 1-11
messages
list of, 9-12
MIN (minimum), 2-25
MINΣ, 5-17
of list, 7-7
minimum number, 2-3
MINREAL, 2-19
MOD (modulo), 2-25
Modes
angle, 1-7
Display, 1-7
variables, 2-8
MSGBOX, 8-23
MTH menu key, 2-13
multiple solutions
plotting to find, 4-8
multiplication
implied, 2-2
multiply, 2-15
N
NS, 5-17
of list, 7-7
name conflict, 9-11
names
formal, 2-11
naming
aplets, 1-26
programs, 8-3
natural exponential, 2-15, 2-20
natural log plus 1, 2-20
NEG. See negation
negation, 2-16
negative numbers, 2-2
Nmax variable, 8-30
Nmin variable, 8-30
no equations checked, 9-11
normal distribution, upper-tail
probability, 2-23
NOT, 2-27
Note view, 1-18
Notepad, 1-18
creating note in, 1-23
notes
editing, 1-19
importing, 1-19
printing, 8-20
writing, 1-18
writing in Notepad, 1-24
NoteText, 1-19
to insert line breaks, 8-24
NRNG (index for sequence plots), 3-18
NRNG field, 8-30
nth root, 2-16
Number format
Engineering, 1-7
Fixed, 1-7
Fraction, 1-7
fractions, 1-8
in Solve, 4-5
Scientific, 1-7
Standard, 1-7
numbers
maximum, minimum, 2-3
numeric derivative, 2-12
numeric precision, 2-6
Numeric view, 1-12
adding X values, 3-23
automatic, 3-23
build your own table, 3-26
recalculating, 3-23
setup, 3-25, 3-26
Statistics, 5-11, 5-16
O
off
automatic, 1-2
power, 1-1
off screen, 9-11
ON key, 1-1
one-variable data, 5-6
one-variable statistics, 5-7
computed, 5-17
opening
aplets, 1-25
operations
in programs, 8-1
OR, 2-27
order of operation
specified with parentheses, 2-2
ordered pairs
entering, 5-9
Overlay Plot, 3-16
overlaying plots, 3-17
P
paired columns, 5-13
parametric aplet, 1-11
Parametric definition, 3-3
parametric example, 3-6, 3-9
parametric plotting
defined, 3-2
equations, 3-30
Parametric variables
Axes, 8-28
Connect, 8-28
Coord, 8-28
Grid, 8-29
Indep, 8-29
InvCross, 8-30
Labels, 8-30
Recenter, 8-30
Simult, 8-31
Tmax, 8-32
Tmin, 8-32
Trace, 8-32
TsChange, 8-32
Xcross, 8-33
Ycross, 8-33
parentheses
to close arguments, 2-2
to specify order of operation, 2-2
pause. See WAIT
percent (%), 2-25
PERM, 2-23
permutations, 2-23
Pi, 2-16
pi (constant), 2-19
PIXOFF, 8-14
PIXON, 8-14
PLOT, 8-16
   Function, Polar, Parametric,
   Sequence, 3-11
   scaling, 3-16
   splitting, 3-16
plot tracing, 3-12
plot type
   one-variable statistics, 5-22
plot types
   sequence, 3-18
   statistical, 5-19
Plot view
   keys, 3-11
plot zooming, 3-13
Plot-Detail, 3-16
plots
   clearing, 3-7
   comparing, 3-7
   drawing boxes in, 3-15
   interrupting, 3-7
   overlaying, 3-17
   resetting, 3-16
   scaling, 3-16
   setting up, 3-18
   split-screen view, 3-17
   tracing, 3-8
   undefined points, 3-8
Plot-Table, 3-16
plotting
   BoxWhisker, 8-31
   equations, 4-6
   histogram, 8-31
   in Solve aplet, 4-8
   Solve equations, 4-6
   statistical data, 5-19
   types of plots, 3-1
plotting intervals, 3-18
plotting marks
   statistics, 5-4, 5-8, 5-22
plotting parameters
   statistics, 5-22
plotting resolution, 3-18
   and tracing, 3-12
Plot-View variables
   Θrng, 8-32
   Θstep, 8-32
   Area, 8-28
   Connect, 8-28
   Coord, 8-28
   Extremum, 8-29
   FastRes, 8-29
   Function, 8-28
   Grid, 8-29
   Hmin/Hmax, 8-29
   Hwidth, 8-29
   InvCross, 8-30
   Isect, 8-30
   Labels, 8-30
   Nmin/Nmax, 8-30
   Recenter, 8-30
   Root, 8-30
   S1mark/S5mark, 8-31
   SeqPlot, 8-31
   Simult, 8-31
   Slope, 8-31
   StatPlot, 8-31
   Tracing, 8-29
polar aplet, 1-11
Polar definition, 3-3
polar example, 3-7, 3-9
polar plotting
   defined, 3-2
   examples, 3-32
Polar variables
   Axes, 8-28
   Connect, 8-28
   Coord, 8-28
   Grid, 8-29
   Indep, 8-29
   InvCross, 8-30
   Labels, 8-30
   Recenter, 8-30
   Simult, 8-31
   Trace, 8-32
   Xcross, 8-33
   Ycross, 8-33
POLYCOEF, 2-22
POLYVAL, 2-22
POLYFORM, 2-22
polynomial functions, 2-22

Index-11
POLYROOT, 2-22
POS, 7-5
power, 1-2
    saving with automatic turn-off, 1-2
power fit, 5-15
power function, 2-16
PRDISPLAY, 8-20
precision
    numeric, 2-6
predicted values
    statistical, 5-24
PRHISTORY, 8-20
Print commands
    PRDISPLAY, 8-20
    PRHISTORY, 8-20
    PRVAR, 8-20
printing
    display, 8-20
    notes, 8-20
    program, 8-20
    stack history, 8-20
    variables, 8-20
probability functions, 2-23
program
    catalog keys, 8-3
    editor, 8-9
    printing, 8-20
programming
    commands, 8-4
    delimiters, 8-1
    structured, 8-1
programs
    copying, 8-8
    creating, 8-3
    debugging, 8-7
    deleting, 8-7
    editing, 8-3, 8-5
    naming, 8-3
    pausing, 8-24
    running, 8-7
    saving, 8-4
    sending and receiving, 8-6
    stopping, 8-8
Prompt commands
    BEEP, 8-21
    CHOOSE, 8-21
    DISP, 8-22
    EDITMAT, 8-22
    FREEZE, 8-22
    GETKEY, 8-22
    INPUT, 8-23
    MSGBOX, 8-23
    WAIT, 8-24
    PRVAR, 8-20
    PSDEV, 5-17
    PVARΣ, 5-17
Q
    Q1, 5-17
    Q3, 5-17
    QR factorization, 6-11
    QUAD, 2-26
    quadratic fit, 5-15
    quadratics
        solving, 2-26
    quitting views, 1-13
    QUOTE, 2-26
    quotes
        in program names, 8-3
R
    RAD annunciator (radians mode), 1-6
    RAD→DEG (radians to degrees), 2-25
    Radians format, 2-15
    RAM, 9-8
    RANDMAT, 8-19
    RANDOM, 2-23
    random number
        generating, 8-25
        random numbers, 2-23
    RANDSEED, 8-25
    RANK, 6-11
    RCI (multiply row), 8-19
    RE, 2-18
    real part, 2-18
    real-number functions, 2-24
    recalculation for table, 3-23
    recalling
        number from edit line, 1-17
        receive error, 9-11
        receiving
            aplets, 1-27
            lists, 7-3
            programs, 8-6
        Recenter variable, 8-30
        reciprocal, 2-16
            complex, 2-16
        RECURSE, 2-21
        recursive evaluation, 2-21
        REDIM, 8-19
redrawing
  table of numbers, 3-24
reduced row echelon, 6-11
regression
  example, 5-4
  values, 5-21
regression analysis, 5-21
regression fit
  user-defined, 5-15
regression formula, 5-15
regression model
  statistical, 5-10, 5-14
regression models, 5-15
  defining, 5-16
regulatory information, 9-1
relative error
  statistical, 5-21
RefErr, 5-21
REPLACE, 8-16, 8-19
replacing
  portion of a graphic, 8-16
  portion of a matrix, 8-19
RES
  plotting, 3-18
resetting
  aplets, 1-26
  calculator, 9-8
  memory, 9-8
Resetting settings
  Setup view, 3-18, 3-25
resolution
  plotting, 3-18
result
  copying to edit line, 1-9
  last, 2-5
  reusing, 1-9
retrieve. See recall
retrieving
  Aplet variables, 8-27
  Home variables, 8-26
reusing a previous result, 1-9
REVERSE, 7-5
ROM, 9-8
root
  interactive, 3-20
  nth, 2-16
Root variable, 8-30
root-finder
  displaying in Solve aplet, 4-8
root-finding
  interactive, 3-19
  variables, 3-20
root-finding operations, 3-20
roots
  polynomial, 2-22
ROUND (round), 2-25
ROWNORM (row norm), 6-11
rows
  changing position, 8-20
RREF, 6-11
RUN, 8-12
running
  aplets, 1-25
  programs, 8-7
S
  S variable
    Statistics, 5-10
S1...S5, 5-10
S1MARK, 5-22
S1mark-S5mark variables, 8-31
saving
  aplets, 1-25
  automatic, 1-16
  from Home edit line, 1-17
  power, 1-2
  programs, 8-4
scale, 8-19
  resetting, 3-16
SCALEADD, 8-19
scaling options, 3-13, 3-16
scatter plot, 5-20
scatter plots, 5-19
SCHUR decomposition, 6-12
Scientific display, 1-7
scientific notation, 2-2
Scientific number format, 1-7
scrolling
  in Function and Sequence plots, 3-8
  in Trace mode, 3-12
searching
  menu lists, 1-11
  speed searches, 1-11
SEC (secant), 2-28
SELECT, 8-10
sending
  aplets, 1-27
  lists, 7-3
  programs, 8-6
SEQPLOT, 3-18
SeqPlot variable, 8-31
sequence
  finding square root, 3-33
sequence aplet, 1-12
Sequence definition, 3-3
sequence example, 3-7, 3-10
sequence plots
  choosing type, 8-31
sequence plotting
  defined, 3-2
  example, 3-33
Sequence variables
  Axes, 8-28
  Coord, 8-28
  Grid, 8-29
  Indep, 8-29
  InvCross, 8-30
  Labels, 8-30
  Nmax, 8-30
  Nmin, 8-30
  Recenter, 8-30
  SeqPlot, 8-31
  Simult, 8-31
  Trace, 8-32
  Xcross, 8-33
  Ycross, 8-33
service
  hardware, 9-5
Set Factors (zoom), 3-14
SETDEPEND, 8-25
SETFREQ, 8-25
SETINDEP, 8-25
SETSAMPLE, 8-25
setting
  date, 8-22
  time, 8-22
Settings
  resetting, 3-18, 3-25
Setup
  resetting, 3-18, 3-25
Setup view
  numeric, 3-25, 3-26
SETVIEWs, 8-10
shortcut
  for CHOOS, 3-18
SHOW
  in Statistics, 5-12
SIGN
real and complex, 2-25
sign reversal
  complex number, 2-18
  Solve aplet, 4-7
SIMULT
  plotting, 3-19
Simult variable, 8-31
SIN (sine), 2-15
singular value decomposition
  matrix, 6-12
singular values
  matrix, 6-12
SINH, 2-20
SIZE
  list, 7-5
  matrix, 6-12
size of aplet, 1-25
Sketch keys, 1-20
sketch sets, 1-22
Sketch view, 1-18
sketches
  attaching to aplets, 1-16
  creating a set of, 1-22
  drawing, 1-20
  importing, 1-19
  labeling, 1-22
slope
  interactive, 3-20
  statistical, 5-21
Slope variable, 8-31
softkey labels, 1-6
Solve
  equations, plotting, 4-6
  initial guesses, 4-5
  roots, 4-6
  setting number format, 4-5
  solutions, 4-6
Solve aplet, 4-1
  displaying root-finder, 4-8
  interpreting intermediate guesses, 4-8
  interpreting results, 4-7
  messages, 4-7
  plotting to find guesses, 4-8
  solving for an unknown, 4-4
Solve equations
  combining, 4-2
Solve variables
  Axes, 8-28
  combining, 4-2
Connect, 8-28
Coord, 8-28
FastRes, 8-29
Grid, 8-29
Indep, 8-29
InvCross, 8-30
Labels, 8-30
Recenter, 8-30
Simult, 8-31
Trace, 8-32
Xcross, 8-33
Ycross, 8-33

solving

equations, 4-2
for the unknown variable, 4-4
quadratic equations, 2-26

SORT, 7-5
in Statistics, 5-11

sorting, 1-26
build-your-own table, 3-27
elements in a list, 7-5
in alphabetic order, 1-26
in chronological order, 1-26

SPECNORM, 6-12
SPECRAD, 6-12
spectral norm
matrix, 6-12
spectral radius
matrix, 6-12
speed search, 1-11
square, 2-16
square root, 2-16
sequence method, 3-33
SSDEV, 5-17
stack history
printing, 8-20
stairstep graphs, 3-2, 3-10
Standard format, 1-7

Statistics variables

Indep, 8-29

statistical
regression, 5-10
statistical analysis
example, 5-2
statistical data
columns of, 5-5
computed, 5-16
defining, 5-6, 5-9
deleting, 5-13
dependent, 5-10
editing, 5-13
entering, 5-6, 5-9
independent, 5-10
inserting, 5-13
minimum, 5-5
one-variable, 5-7
order of, 5-13
plotting, 5-19
saving, 5-12
sorting, 5-13
stored in data sets, 8-37
storing from lists, 5-5
two-variable, 5-10

statistical plots
analyzing, 5-23
tracing, 5-23
zooming, 5-23

statistical plotting
troubleshooting, 5-22

statistical values
predicted, 5-24

statistical variables, 5-7

statistics
angle mode, 5-12
computed, 5-16
computing, 5-16
computing IVAR, 5-7
frequencies, 5-6
Numeric view, 5-11, 5-16
one-variable, 5-6
ordered pairs, 5-9
plot type, 5-22
regression model, 5-14
Symbolic Setup, 5-10
Symbolic Setup view, 5-12
Symbolic view, 5-12, 5-16
two-variable, 5-9

statistics (IVAR)
computing, 5-7

Statistics aplet, 1-12, 5-1
data structure, 8-37

statistics columns
paired, 5-13

statistics plot
choosing type, 8-31

statistics plots
limit on, 5-7, 5-10

statistics variables
Aaxes, 8-28
computed, 5-16
Connect, 8-28
Grid, 8-29
Hmin/Hmax, 8-29
Hwidth, 8-29
InvCross, 8-30
Labels, 8-30
Recenter, 8-30
S1mark-S5mark, 8-31
StatPlot, 8-31
Trace, 8-32
Xcross, 8-33
Ycross, 8-33
Stat-One commands
DOIVSTATS, 8-25
RANDSEED, 8-25
SETFREQ, 8-25
SETSAMPLE, 8-25
STATPLOT, 5-22
StatPlot variable, 8-31
STATS, 5-11, 5-16
Stat-Two commands
SETDEPEND, 8-25
SETINDEP, 8-25
status messages, 9-12
step size
- independent variable, 8-32
STOP, 8-12
stopping programs, 8-8
storing. See saving
- list elements, 7-1, 7-3, 7-4
- matrix element, 6-5
- matrix elements, 6-2, 6-5
storing numbers, 1-17
strings
- entering string of letters, 1-2
- literal in symbolic operations, 2-26
structured programming, 8-1
Student's t distribution, upper-tail
probability, 2-23
SUB, 8-16, 8-20
subtract, 2-15
summary statistics, 5-18
Summation function, 2-21
SVARΣ, 5-17
SVD, 6-12
SVL, 6-12
SWAPCOL (swap columns), 8-20
SWAPROW (swap rows), 8-20
symbolic derivative, 2-12
symbolic names, 2-11
symbolic operations, 2-26
Symbolic Setup view
in Statistics, 5-14
Statistics, 5-10, 5-12
Symbolic view
- defining expressions, 3-2
evaluating variables, 3-5
keys, 3-3
Statistics, 5-12, 5-16
syntax, 9-11
syntax errors, 8-7
T
table of numbers, 3-23
table view, 3-23
TAN (tangent), 2-15
TANH, 2-20
TAYLOR (Taylor's polynomial), 2-17
technical support
- hardware service, 9-5
- software, 9-4
temperature
- operating, 9-4
- storage, 9-4
TEXT, 1-22
text entry, 1-18
text_item, 8-22
tickmarks
- plotting, 3-18
time
- converting, 2-24
time (setting), 8-22
times sign, 2-2
title
- screen, 1-7
TLINE, 8-14
Tmax variable, 8-32
Tmin variable, 8-32
too few arguments, 9-12
TOTΣ, 5-17
- of list, 7-7
TRACE, 6-12
- in Statistics, 5-23
TRACE mode, 3-12, 3-13
tracing
- more than one curve, 3-12
- not matching plot, 3-12
tracing functions, 3-12
tracing plots, 3-8
transmitting
  programs, 8-6
transmitting aplets, 1-27
transpose matrix, 6-12
Trig scaling, 3-16
trigonometric functions, 2-15
trigonometry operations, 2-28
TRN, 6-12
TRNG, 8-32
TRNG (time range), 3-18
TRUNCATE, 2-25
TSTEP
  plotting, 3-18
Tstep variable, 8-32
two-variable data, 5-9
two-variable statistics, 5-14
  computed, 5-19
typing
  letters, 1-2

U
UNCHECK, 8-10
undefined name, 9-12
undefined result, 9-12
un-zoom, 3-14
upper-tail probabilities, 2-23
User Defined
  regression fit, 5-15
user prompts, 8-21
UTPC (Upper-Tail Chi-Squared), 2-23
UTPF (Upper-Tail Snedecor’s F
  probability), 2-23
UTPN (Upper-Tail Normal probability), 2-23
UTPT (Upper-Tail Student’s t
  probability), 2-23

V
values
  storing in variables, 2-6
VAR menu, 2-8
variable
  definition of, 9-10
variables
  aplet, 2-10
categories of, 2-8
clearing, 1-18
definitions of, 2-8
deleting, 1-18

Home, 2-9
Home and aplet, 1-18
in Symbolic view, 3-5
local, 2-10
printing, 8-20
real, 2-9
root-finding, 3-20
solving for values, 4-4
storing, 1-17
storing values in, 2-6
types, 2-8
values in, 1-18
variables menu, 2-8
vectors
  column, 6-1
definition of, 9-10
view options, 3-16
views, 3-16. See aplet views
  changing, 1-13
definition of, 9-10

W
WAIT, 8-24
warning symbol, 1-5
warranty, 9-3
where command (1), 2-26
WHILE...REPEAT...END, 8-17

X
Xcross variable, 8-33
XOR, 2-27
XFPN (exponent), 2-25
XRN (horizontal plot axis), 3-18
XTICK, 3-18
X-zoom, 3-14

Y
Ycross variable, 8-33
y-intercept
  statistical, 5-21
YRN (vertical plot axis), 3-18
YTICK, 3-18
Y-zoom, 3-14

Z
Zero
Solve aplet, 4-7
ZEROGROB, 8-16
ZOOM, 3-13, 3-23
  in Statistics, 5-23
  Numeric view, 3-24
  zoom in, 3-14

Index-17
zoom options, 3-14
redrawing table of numbers, 3-24

zoom out, 3-14
ZOOM table, 3-24
Contacting Hewlett-Packard

For information about Using this Product. If you have questions about how to use the product that are not covered in this guide, you can contact

Hewlett-Packard Calculator Support
(970) 392-1001
Mon.-Fri. 8:00am-5:00pm Pacific time. Closed holidays.

For Hardware Service. See appendix A of this user’s guide for shipping instructions and information on obtaining service. Before you send your product for service, please call HP Calculator Support (at the above number) for diagnostic instructions and other service information.

Visit Hewlett-Packard on the World Wide Web:
http://www.hp.com/calculators
Aplet Views

**LIB**
library

**SYMB**
symbolic

**[SETUP- PLOT]**

**PLOT**
plot

**NUM**
numeric